



PeopleSoft Enterprise CRM 8.9 Order Capture Applications PeopleBook

June 2004

PeopleSoft Enterprise CRM 8.9 Order Capture Applications PeopleBook

SKU CRM89MRO-B 0604

Copyright © 2001 - 2004 PeopleSoft, Inc. All rights reserved.

All material contained in this documentation is proprietary and confidential to PeopleSoft, Inc. ("PeopleSoft"), protected by copyright laws and subject to the nondisclosure provisions of the applicable PeopleSoft agreement. No part of this documentation may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted in any form or by any means, including, but not limited to, electronic, graphic, mechanical, photocopying, recording, or otherwise without the prior written permission of PeopleSoft.

This documentation is subject to change without notice, and PeopleSoft does not warrant that the material contained in this documentation is free of errors. Any errors found in this document should be reported to PeopleSoft in writing.

The copyrighted software that accompanies this document is licensed for use only in strict accordance with the applicable license agreement which should be read carefully as it governs the terms of use of the software and this document, including the disclosure thereof.

PeopleSoft, PeopleTools, PS/nVision, PeopleCode, PeopleBooks, PeopleTalk, and Vantive are registered trademarks, and Pure Internet Architecture, Intelligent Context Manager, and The Real-Time Enterprise are trademarks of PeopleSoft, Inc. All other company and product names may be trademarks of their respective owners. The information contained herein is subject to change without notice.

Open Source Disclosure

PeopleSoft takes no responsibility for its use or distribution of any open source or shareware software or documentation and disclaims any and all liability or damages resulting from use of said software or documentation. The following open source software may be used in PeopleSoft products and the following disclaimers are provided.

Apache Software Foundation

This product includes software developed by the Apache Software Foundation (<http://www.apache.org/>). Copyright (c) 1999-2000 The Apache Software Foundation. All rights reserved.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESSED OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE APACHE SOFTWARE FOUNDATION OR ITS CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

OpenSSL

Copyright (c) 1998-2003 The OpenSSL Project. All rights reserved.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE OpenSSL PROJECT "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESSED OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE OpenSSL PROJECT OR ITS CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

SSLey

Copyright (c) 1995-1998 Eric Young. All rights reserved.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY ERIC YOUNG "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE AUTHOR OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

Loki Library

Copyright (c) 2001 by Andrei Alexandrescu. This code accompanies the book:

Alexandrescu, Andrei. "Modern C++ Design: Generic Programming and Design Patterns Applied". Copyright (c) 2001. Addison-Wesley. Permission to use, copy, modify, distribute and sell this software for any purpose is hereby granted without fee, provided that the above copyright notice appear in all copies and that both that copyright notice and this permission notice appear in supporting documentation.

Contents

General Preface

| | |
|--|-------------|
| About This PeopleBook | xiii |
| PeopleSoft Application Prerequisites..... | xiii |
| PeopleSoft Application Fundamentals..... | xiii |
| Related Documentation..... | xiv |
| Obtaining Documentation Updates..... | xiv |
| Ordering Printed Documentation..... | xiv |
| Typographical Conventions and Visual Cues..... | xv |
| Typographical Conventions..... | xv |
| Visual Cues..... | xvi |
| Country, Region, and Industry Identifiers..... | xvi |
| Currency Codes..... | xvii |
| Comments and Suggestions..... | xvii |
| Common Elements in These PeopleBooks | xvii |

Preface

| | |
|--|------------|
| PeopleSoft Order Capture Applications Preface..... | xix |
| PeopleSoft Enterprise CRM 8.9 Order Capture Applications PeopleBook..... | xix |
| PeopleSoft Enterprise CRM 8.9 Application Fundamentals PeopleBook..... | xxi |
| PeopleTools PeopleBooks..... | xxi |

Part 1 Order Capture Applications

Chapter 1

| | |
|---|----------|
| Getting Started with PeopleSoft Enterprise CRM Order Capture Applications..... | 3 |
| PeopleSoft Enterprise Order Capture Applications Overview..... | 3 |
| PeopleSoft Order Capture Applications Business Processes..... | 3 |
| PeopleSoft Order Capture Process Flow..... | 6 |
| PeopleSoft Order Capture Integrations..... | 8 |
| PeopleSoft Order Capture Applications Implementation..... | 10 |

Part 2 PeopleSoft Order Capture

Chapter 2

| | |
|--|-----------|
| Defining PeopleSoft Order Capture Business Units..... | 15 |
| Understanding PeopleSoft Business Units..... | 15 |
| Understanding PeopleSoft Order Capture Business Units..... | 15 |
| Defining PeopleSoft Order Capture Business Units..... | 16 |
| Page Used to Define PeopleSoft Order Capture Business Units..... | 16 |
| Creating PeopleSoft Order Capture Business Units..... | 16 |

Chapter 3

| | |
|---|-----------|
| Setting Up PeopleSoft Order Capture..... | 25 |
| Understanding PeopleSoft Order Capture Setup..... | 25 |
| Understanding Toolbar Configuration..... | 26 |
| Understanding Application Class Set Creation..... | 27 |
| Common Elements Used in This Chapter..... | 27 |
| Setting Up PeopleSoft Order Capture Tables..... | 27 |
| Understanding MCF Types..... | 28 |
| Common Elements Used in This Section..... | 29 |
| Pages Used to Set Up PeopleSoft Order Capture Tables..... | 29 |
| Accessing PeopleSoft Order Capture Setup Tables..... | 31 |
| Defining Charge Frequencies..... | 31 |
| Defining Charge Types..... | 32 |
| Creating Data Event Handlers..... | 33 |
| Defining Hold Codes..... | 34 |
| Defining Hold Denial Codes..... | 35 |
| Creating Dynamic Events..... | 35 |
| Defining Header Statuses..... | 36 |
| Creating Line Actions..... | 37 |
| Creating Line Status Types..... | 38 |
| Creating Line Statuses..... | 39 |
| Defining Line Statuses Drop Downs..... | 39 |
| Defining MCF Types..... | 40 |
| Defining Note Origins..... | 41 |
| Defining Note Types..... | 42 |
| Creating Note Visibility..... | 42 |
| Defining Priorities..... | 43 |

| | |
|--|----|
| Defining Source Codes..... | 44 |
| Defining Frequency Mappings..... | 45 |
| Defining Order and Quote Processing..... | 46 |
| Pages Used to Define Order and Quote Processing..... | 47 |
| Creating Type Definitions..... | 47 |
| Defining Hold Processing..... | 49 |
| Defining Business Project Conditions..... | 52 |
| Defining Audit Conditions..... | 53 |
| Defining Maintenance Conditions..... | 54 |
| Defining Dynamic Events..... | 55 |
| Defining MCF Types..... | 55 |
| Defining Process Types..... | 56 |
| Defining Integrations and Mappings..... | 57 |
| Pages Used to Define Integrations and Mappings..... | 58 |
| Defining Integrations..... | 58 |
| Defining Header Status Mappings..... | 59 |
| Defining Line Status Mappings..... | 60 |
| Defining Source Mappings..... | 61 |
| Setting Up Credit Card Integration..... | 61 |
| Understanding Credit Card Integration..... | 62 |
| Setting Up Credit Card Processing..... | 62 |
| Setting Up Freight Integration..... | 62 |
| Understanding Freight Integration Setup..... | 62 |
| Page Used to Set Up Freight Integration..... | 62 |
| Setting Up the Freight Calculation Integration..... | 63 |
| Testing the Freight Calculation Integration..... | 63 |
| Defining Carriers..... | 64 |
| Constructing Tracking Numbers..... | 65 |
| Defining Tax Installation Options..... | 66 |
| Understanding Tax Installation Options Setup..... | 66 |
| Page Used to Define Tax Installation Options..... | 67 |
| Defining Tax Provider Options..... | 67 |

Chapter 4

| | |
|---|-----------|
| Understanding Product, Pricing, and Catalog Setup..... | 69 |
| Products, PeopleSoft Enterprise Pricer, and Catalogs..... | 69 |
| Product Setup..... | 70 |
| Pricing Setup..... | 71 |
| Catalog Setup..... | 71 |

Chapter 5

| | |
|--|-----------|
| Working with PeopleSoft Order Capture Business Projects..... | 73 |
| Understanding PeopleSoft Order Capture Business Projects..... | 73 |
| Defining PeopleSoft Order Capture Business Projects..... | 75 |
| Understanding Business Project Definition..... | 75 |
| Setting Up and Viewing PeopleSoft Order Capture Business Projects..... | 76 |
| Viewing PeopleSoft Order Capture Business Projects..... | 77 |
| Page Used to View PeopleSoft Order Capture Business Projects..... | 77 |
| Viewing the PeopleSoft Order Capture Business Project Tree..... | 77 |
| Viewing the Order Business Project..... | 80 |
| Viewing the Order Maintenance Business Project..... | 82 |
| Viewing the Quote Business Project..... | 85 |

Chapter 6

| | |
|--|-----------|
| Integrating with Fulfillment and Billing Systems..... | 87 |
| Understanding Fulfillment..... | 87 |
| Integration Setup..... | 87 |
| EIPs..... | 88 |
| Activation of EIPs for Use with PeopleSoft SCM..... | 90 |
| Order Maintenance EIPs..... | 90 |
| Activating EIPs..... | 91 |
| Activating Integration Broker EIPs..... | 91 |
| Creating Autonumbering for Orders and Quotes..... | 92 |
| Mapping Line Statuses..... | 92 |
| Publishing Order and Quote Messages..... | 94 |
| Subscribing to Order Status Messages..... | 99 |
| Subscribing to Order and Quote Acknowledgements..... | 100 |
| Subscribing to ASNs..... | 101 |
| Managing Externally Originating Orders..... | 102 |
| Integrating with Billing Systems..... | 103 |
| Setting Up an Integration to PeopleSoft Transaction Billing Processor..... | 103 |
| Using the PeopleSoft Transaction Billing Processor Integration from PeopleSoft Order Capture..... | 103 |

Chapter 7

| | |
|--|------------|
| Working with PeopleSoft Service Management..... | 105 |
| Understanding Service Management..... | 105 |
| Understanding Service Management EIPs and Business Projects..... | 106 |

| | |
|--------------------------------------|-----|
| Add Service..... | 107 |
| Change Service..... | 107 |
| Suspend Service..... | 108 |
| Resume Service..... | 108 |
| Disconnect Service..... | 109 |
| Renew Service..... | 109 |
| Cancel Service..... | 110 |
| Business Projects..... | 110 |
| Working with Service Management..... | 111 |
| Pages Used to Manage Services..... | 111 |
| Maintaining Service..... | 111 |

Chapter 8

| | |
|--|------------|
| Managing Orders and Quotes..... | 113 |
| Understanding PeopleSoft Order Capture..... | 113 |
| Common Elements Used in This Chapter..... | 113 |
| PeopleSoft Order Capture Functionality..... | 115 |
| Hotkeys..... | 116 |
| PeopleSoft Order Capture Access..... | 117 |
| Delivered User IDs and User Roles..... | 118 |
| Support for Industry-Specific Dynamic Events..... | 118 |
| Correspondence Generation..... | 119 |
| Personalizing PeopleSoft Order Capture..... | 121 |
| Understanding Personalization..... | 121 |
| Pages Used to Personalize PeopleSoft Order Capture..... | 121 |
| Choosing Order Entry Form Personalizations..... | 122 |
| Changing the Default Entry Form Values..... | 122 |
| Configuring Search Criteria | 124 |
| Creating Orders or Quotes..... | 124 |
| Pages Used to Create Orders or Quotes..... | 125 |
| Entering Orders or Quotes..... | 125 |
| Getting Product Recommendations..... | 132 |
| Starting a PeopleSoft Real-Time Advisor Dialog..... | 132 |
| Viewing or Modifying Line Details..... | 133 |
| Creating Service Agreements..... | 136 |
| Creating Configurations..... | 137 |
| Pages Used to Create Configurations..... | 138 |
| Configuring a Product Using PeopleSoft Configurator..... | 138 |
| Configuring a Dynamic Package..... | 139 |

| | |
|---|-----|
| Entering Shipping, Payment, and Billing Information..... | 140 |
| Pages Used to Enter Shipping, Payment, and Billing Information..... | 141 |
| Entering Shipping Information..... | 141 |
| Managing Billing Information..... | 143 |
| Viewing Price Adjustments..... | 145 |
| Page Used to View Price Adjustments..... | 145 |
| Viewing Price Adjustment Details..... | 145 |
| Adding and Viewing Notes and Attachments..... | 146 |
| Pages Used to Add or View Notes and Attachments..... | 147 |
| Adding or Viewing Notes or Attachments..... | 147 |
| Managing Holds..... | 148 |
| Understanding Holds..... | 148 |
| Pages Used to Manage Holds..... | 150 |
| Viewing the Hold Summary..... | 150 |
| Maintaining Orders..... | 153 |
| Understanding Order Maintenance..... | 153 |
| Viewing Related Actions..... | 155 |
| Pages Used to View Related Actions..... | 156 |
| Viewing Related Actions..... | 156 |
| Working with Business Projects..... | 156 |
| Viewing History..... | 157 |
| Pages Used to View History..... | 157 |
| Viewing History Details..... | 157 |

Chapter 9

| | |
|---|------------|
| Understanding Order Capture Integration with PeopleSoft Policy and Claims Presentment and PeopleSoft Banking Transactions..... | 159 |
| Integration Functionality..... | 159 |
| Order Capture Integration with PeopleSoft Policy and Claims Presentment..... | 159 |
| Policy and Claims Presentment Business Process Model..... | 160 |
| PeopleSoft Order Capture Integration with PeopleSoft Banking Transactions..... | 161 |
| Banking Transactions Business Process Model..... | 161 |
| Order Capture Self-Service for PeopleSoft Banking Transactions and PeopleSoft Policy and Claims Presentment..... | 162 |

Chapter 10

| | |
|---|------------|
| Working with Interactive Reports for PeopleSoft Order Capture..... | 165 |
| Understanding PeopleSoft CRM Interactive Reports..... | 165 |

| | |
|--|-----|
| Setting Up Interactive Reports for PeopleSoft Order Capture..... | 166 |
| Using Interactive Reports for PeopleSoft Order Capture..... | 166 |
| Dimensions..... | 167 |
| Pages Used to Run Interactive Reports for PeopleSoft Order Capture | 168 |
| Using the Order Revenue Interactive Report..... | 168 |
| Using the Order Metrics Interactive Report..... | 169 |
| Using the Enterprise Order Revenue Interactive Report..... | 169 |
| Using the Enterprise Order Metrics Interactive Report..... | 170 |

Part 3

PeopleSoft Order Capture Self Service

Chapter 11

| | |
|--|------------|
| Defining PeopleSoft Order Capture Self Service Business Units..... | 173 |
| Understanding PeopleSoft Business Units..... | 173 |
| Understanding PeopleSoft Order Capture Self Service Business Units..... | 173 |
| Defining PeopleSoft Order Capture Self Service Business Units..... | 174 |
| Pages Used to Define PeopleSoft Order Capture Self Service Business Units..... | 174 |
| Creating a PeopleSoft Order Capture Self Service Business Unit..... | 174 |

Chapter 12

| | |
|--|------------|
| Setting Up PeopleSoft Order Capture Self Service..... | 177 |
|--|------------|

Chapter 13

| | |
|--|------------|
| Using PeopleSoft Order Capture Self Service..... | 179 |
| Understanding PeopleSoft Order Capture Self Service..... | 179 |
| Understanding Delivered User ID, User Role Identification and the Creating of Passwords..... | 180 |
| Understanding Supplemental Pagelet Identification..... | 181 |
| Selecting Products..... | 182 |
| Pages Used to Select Products | 182 |
| Finding Products..... | 182 |
| Choosing a Product..... | 183 |
| Viewing Product Details..... | 185 |
| Comparing Products..... | 186 |
| Launching PeopleSoft Real-Time Advisor..... | 188 |
| Using Quick Order Entry..... | 189 |

| | |
|---|-----|
| Understanding Quick Order Entry..... | 189 |
| Page Used to Use Quick Order Entry | 189 |
| Selecting Products Quickly..... | 189 |
| Using the Shopping Cart..... | 190 |
| Understanding the Shopping Cart..... | 190 |
| Pages Used to Access and Use the Shopping Cart..... | 191 |
| Working from within the Shopping Cart..... | 191 |
| Deleting Products from the Shopping Cart..... | 193 |
| Adding Notes or Attachments..... | 193 |
| Managing Checkout..... | 194 |
| Pages Used to Manage Checkout..... | 195 |
| Managing Shipping, Product, and Payment Options From the Checkout Page..... | 195 |
| Handling Multiple Shipments..... | 198 |
| Accessing and Changing Product Attributes..... | 198 |
| Receiving an Order or Quote Confirmation..... | 198 |
| Changing a Submitted Order Derived from a Quote..... | 199 |
| Viewing Order or Quote Status..... | 200 |
| Pages Used to View Order or Quote Status..... | 200 |
| Searching for Orders..... | 200 |
| Viewing Order Details..... | 202 |
| Searching for Quotes..... | 203 |
| Viewing Quote Details..... | 204 |
| Converting a Quote to an Order..... | 204 |
| Tracking Orders..... | 205 |

Part 4

PeopleSoft Mobile Order Capture

Chapter 14

| | |
|--|------------|
| Understanding PeopleSoft Mobile Order Capture..... | 209 |
| Understanding PeopleSoft Mobile Order Capture..... | 209 |
| Functionality Differences with PeopleSoft Order Capture..... | 209 |
| Synchronization Options..... | 210 |
| Data Distribution Rules..... | 211 |

Chapter 15

| | |
|---|------------|
| Setting Up PeopleSoft Mobile Order Capture..... | 213 |
| Understanding Mobile Setup..... | 213 |
| Performing an Initial Bootstrap Synchronization..... | 213 |
| Defining PeopleSoft Mobile Order Capture Options..... | 214 |
| Pages Used to Define PeopleSoft Mobile Order Capture Options..... | 215 |
| Defining Customer Options..... | 215 |
| Defining Product Defaults..... | 217 |
| Defining Mobile Order Capture Defaults..... | 218 |

Chapter 16

| | |
|--|------------|
| Using PeopleSoft Mobile Order Capture..... | 221 |
| Understanding PeopleSoft Mobile Order Capture Options..... | 221 |
| Working with Customers on the Mobile Device..... | 221 |
| Working with Products on the Mobile Device..... | 221 |
| Understanding Product Data in PeopleSoft Mobile Order Capture..... | 221 |
| Pages Used to View Product Information..... | 222 |
| Viewing Products in PeopleSoft Mobile Order Capture..... | 222 |
| Working with Orders and Quotes on the Mobile Device..... | 224 |
| Pages Used to View or Create Orders or Quotes..... | 224 |
| Creating New Orders or Quotes..... | 225 |
| Viewing Existing Orders or Quotes..... | 231 |

Appendix A

| | |
|--|------------|
| ISO Country and Currency Codes..... | 233 |
| ISO Country Codes..... | 233 |
| ISO Currency Codes..... | 242 |

| | |
|--|------------|
| Glossary of PeopleSoft Terms..... | 253 |
|--|------------|

| | |
|--------------------|------------|
| Index | 269 |
|--------------------|------------|

About This PeopleBook

PeopleBooks provide you with the information that you need to implement and use PeopleSoft applications.

This preface discusses:

- PeopleSoft application prerequisites.
- PeopleSoft application fundamentals.
- Related documentation.
- Typographical conventions and visual cues.
- Comments and suggestions.
- Common elements in PeopleBooks.

Note. PeopleBooks document only page elements that require additional explanation. If a page element is not documented with the process or task in which it is used, then either it requires no additional explanation or it is documented with common elements for the section, chapter, PeopleBook, or product line. Elements that are common to all PeopleSoft applications are defined in this preface.

PeopleSoft Application Prerequisites

To benefit fully from the information that is covered in these books, you should have a basic understanding of how to use PeopleSoft applications.

You might also want to complete at least one PeopleSoft introductory training course.

You should be familiar with navigating the system and adding, updating, and deleting information by using PeopleSoft windows, menus, and pages. You should also be comfortable using the World Wide Web and the Microsoft Windows or Windows NT graphical user interface.

These books do not review navigation and other basics. They present the information that you need to use the system and implement your PeopleSoft applications most effectively.

PeopleSoft Application Fundamentals

Each application PeopleBook provides implementation and processing information for your PeopleSoft database. However, additional, essential information describing the setup and design of your system appears in a companion volume of documentation called the application fundamentals PeopleBook. Each PeopleSoft product line has its own version of this documentation.

The application fundamentals PeopleBook consists of important topics that apply to many or all PeopleSoft applications across a product line. Whether you are implementing a single application, some combination of applications within the product line, or the entire product line, you should be familiar with the contents of this central PeopleBook. It is the starting point for fundamentals, such as setting up control tables and administering security.

Related Documentation

This section discusses how to:

- Obtain documentation updates.
- Order printed documentation.

Obtaining Documentation Updates

You can find updates and additional documentation for this release, as well as previous releases, on the PeopleSoft Customer Connection website. Through the Documentation section of PeopleSoft Customer Connection, you can download files to add to your PeopleBook Library. You'll find a variety of useful and timely materials, including updates to the full PeopleSoft documentation that is delivered on your PeopleBooks CD-ROM.

Important! Before you upgrade, you must check PeopleSoft Customer Connection for updates to the upgrade instructions. PeopleSoft continually posts updates as the upgrade process is refined.

See Also

PeopleSoft Customer Connection, <https://www.peoplesoft.com/corp/en/login.jsp>

Ordering Printed Documentation

You can order printed, bound volumes of the complete PeopleSoft documentation that is delivered on your PeopleBooks CD-ROM. PeopleSoft makes printed documentation available for each major release shortly after the software is shipped. Customers and partners can order printed PeopleSoft documentation by using any of these methods:

- Web
- Telephone
- Email

Web

From the Documentation section of the PeopleSoft Customer Connection website, access the PeopleBooks Press website under the Ordering PeopleBooks topic. The PeopleBooks Press website is a joint venture between PeopleSoft and MMA Partners, the book print vendor. Use a credit card, money order, cashier's check, or purchase order to place your order.

Telephone

Contact MMA Partners at 877 588 2525.

Email

Send email to MMA Partners at peoplesoftpress@mmapartner.com.

See Also

PeopleSoft Customer Connection, <https://www.peoplesoft.com/corp/en/login.jsp>

Typographical Conventions and Visual Cues

This section discusses:

- Typographical conventions.
- Visual cues.
- Country, region, and industry identifiers.
- Currency codes.

Typographical Conventions

This table contains the typographical conventions that are used in PeopleBooks:

| Typographical Convention or Visual Cue | Description |
|--|---|
| Bold | Indicates PeopleCode function names, method names, language constructs, and PeopleCode reserved words that must be included literally in the function call. |
| <i>Italics</i> | Indicates field values, emphasis, and PeopleSoft or other book-length publication titles. In PeopleCode syntax, italic items are placeholders for arguments that your program must supply. We also use italics when we refer to words as words or letters as letters, as in the following: Enter the letter <i>O</i> . |
| KEY+KEY | Indicates a key combination action. For example, a plus sign (+) between keys means that you must hold down the first key while you press the second key. For ALT+W, hold down the ALT key while you press the W key. |
| Monospace font | Indicates a PeopleCode program or other code example. |
| “ ” (quotation marks) | Indicate chapter titles in cross-references and words that are used differently from their intended meanings. |
| . . . (ellipses) | Indicate that the preceding item or series can be repeated any number of times in PeopleCode syntax. |
| { } (curly braces) | Indicate a choice between two options in PeopleCode syntax. Options are separated by a pipe (). |

| Typographical Convention or Visual Cue | Description |
|--|---|
| [] (square brackets) | Indicate optional items in PeopleCode syntax. |
| & (ampersand) | <p>When placed before a parameter in PeopleCode syntax, an ampersand indicates that the parameter is an already instantiated object.</p> <p>Ampersands also precede all PeopleCode variables.</p> |

Visual Cues

PeopleBooks contain the following visual cues.

Notes

Notes indicate information that you should pay particular attention to as you work with the PeopleSoft system.

Note. Example of a note.

If the note is preceded by *Important!*, the note is crucial and includes information that concerns what you must do for the system to function properly.

Important! Example of an important note.

Warnings

Warnings indicate crucial configuration considerations. Pay close attention to warning messages.

Warning! Example of a warning.

Cross-References

PeopleBooks provide cross-references either under the heading “See Also” or on a separate line preceded by the word *See*. Cross-references lead to other documentation that is pertinent to the immediately preceding documentation.

Country, Region, and Industry Identifiers

Information that applies only to a specific country, region, or industry is preceded by a standard identifier in parentheses. This identifier typically appears at the beginning of a section heading, but it may also appear at the beginning of a note or other text.

Example of a country-specific heading: “(FRA) Hiring an Employee”

Example of a region-specific heading: “(Latin America) Setting Up Depreciation”

Country Identifiers

Countries are identified with the International Organization for Standardization (ISO) country code.

See Appendix A, “ISO Country and Currency Codes,” ISO Country Codes.

Region Identifiers

Regions are identified by the region name. The following region identifiers may appear in PeopleBooks:

- Asia Pacific
- Europe
- Latin America
- North America

Industry Identifiers

Industries are identified by the industry name or by an abbreviation for that industry. The following industry identifiers may appear in PeopleBooks:

- USF (U.S. Federal)
- E&G (Education and Government)

Currency Codes

Monetary amounts are identified by the ISO currency code.

See Appendix A, “ISO Country and Currency Codes,” ISO Currency Codes.

Comments and Suggestions

Your comments are important to us. We encourage you to tell us what you like, or what you would like to see changed about PeopleBooks and other PeopleSoft reference and training materials. Please send your suggestions to:

PeopleSoft Product Documentation Manager PeopleSoft, Inc. 4460 Hacienda Drive Pleasanton, CA 94588

Or send email comments to doc@peoplesoft.com.

While we cannot guarantee to answer every email message, we will pay careful attention to your comments and suggestions.

Common Elements in These PeopleBooks

| | |
|-----------------------|---|
| As of Date | The last date for which a report or process includes data. |
| Business Unit | An ID that represents a high-level organization of business information. You can use a business unit to define regional or departmental units within a larger organization. |
| Description | Enter up to 30 characters of text. |
| Effective Date | The date on which a table row becomes effective; the date that an action begins. For example, to close out a ledger on June 30, the effective date for the ledger closing would be July 1. This date also determines when |

you can view and change the information. Pages or panels and batch processes that use the information use the current row.

Once, Always, and Don't Run

Select Once to run the request the next time the batch process runs. After the batch process runs, the process frequency is automatically set to Don't Run.

Select Always to run the request every time the batch process runs.

Select Don't Run to ignore the request when the batch process runs.

Report Manager

Click to access the Report List page, where you can view report content, check the status of a report, and see content detail messages (which show you a description of the report and the distribution list).

Process Monitor

Click to access the Process List page, where you can view the status of submitted process requests.

Run

Click to access the Process Scheduler request page, where you can specify the location where a process or job runs and the process output format.

Request ID

An ID that represents a set of selection criteria for a report or process.

User ID

An ID that represents the person who generates a transaction.

SetID

An ID that represents a set of control table information, or TableSets. TableSets enable you to share control table information and processing options among business units. The goal is to minimize redundant data and system maintenance tasks. When you assign a setID to a record group in a business unit, you indicate that all of the tables in the record group are shared between that business unit and any other business unit that also assigns that setID to that record group. For example, you can define a group of common job codes that are shared between several business units. Each business unit that shares the job codes is assigned the same setID for that record group.

Short Description

Enter up to 15 characters of text.

PeopleSoft Order Capture Applications Preface

This preface discusses:

- *PeopleSoft Enterprise CRM 8.9 Order Capture Applications PeopleBook.*
- *PeopleSoft Enterprise CRM 8.9 Application Fundamentals PeopleBook.*
- PeopleTools PeopleBooks.

PeopleSoft Enterprise CRM 8.9 Order Capture Applications PeopleBook

The *PeopleSoft Enterprise CRM 8.9 Order Capture Applications PeopleBook* discusses how to set up and use functionality delivered by these three independently licensed CRM applications:

- PeopleSoft Order Capture.
- PeopleSoft Order Capture Self Service.
- PeopleSoft Mobile Order Capture.

Note. PeopleSoft Real-Time Advisor, PeopleSoft Configurator, and PeopleSoft Mobile Configurator, which are also part of the PeopleSoft Enterprise CRM Sales suite of applications.

Part I: Order Capture Applications

The Order Capture Applications part of the *PeopleSoft Enterprise CRM 8.9 Order Capture Applications PeopleBook* contains the following chapters:

- *PeopleSoft Enterprise CRM 8.9 Order Capture Applications Preface.*

This chapter provides an overview of the *PeopleSoft Enterprise CRM 8.9 Order Capture Applications PeopleBook* and the *PeopleSoft Enterprise CRM 8.9 Application Fundamentals PeopleBook*.

- *Getting Started with PeopleSoft Order Capture Applications.*

This chapter provides an overview of business processes, integrations, and implementation steps for Order Capture applications.

Note. The explanation of implementation steps in this PeopleBook is limited to PeopleSoft Order Capture, PeopleSoft Order Capture Self Service, and PeopleSoft Mobile Order Capture.

Installation information for PeopleSoft Order Capture, PeopleSoft Order Capture Self Service, and PeopleSoft Mobile Order Capture appears in the *PeopleSoft CRM Installation Guide*, which is available on Customer Connection.

Part II: PeopleSoft Order Capture

The PeopleSoft Order Capture part of the *PeopleSoft Enterprise CRM 8.9 Order Capture Applications PeopleBook* contains the following chapters:

- *Navigating in PeopleSoft CRM Order Capture applications.*

This chapter explains how to navigate to the principle order capture setup, management, and maintenance pages for orders, quotes, products, pricing, and Advisor functions.

- *Defining PeopleSoft Order Capture Business Units.*

This chapter explains how to set up and define Order Capture business units.

- *Setting Up PeopleSoft Order Capture.*

This chapter explains how to use the PeopleSoft Order Capture workbenches to set up your order capture preferences. It also explains how to define carriers and advanced tax options.

- *Understanding Product, Pricing, and Catalog Setup.*

This chapter explains how to set up the base tools required for interactive selling, in the form of products, pricing, and catalogs.

- *Working with PeopleSoft Order Capture Business Projects.*

This chapter explains the three PeopleSoft Order Capture business projects: *order*, *quote*, and *order maintenance*.

- *Integrating with Fulfillment and Billing Systems.*

This chapter explains how PeopleSoft Order Capture integrates with fulfillment systems such as PeopleSoft Enterprise Supply Chain Management, and with billing systems such as PeopleSoft Enterprise Contracts.

- *Managing Orders and Quotes.*

This chapter explains how a customer service representative can personalize and use the PeopleSoft Order Capture entry form to manage orders and quotes.

- *Understanding Order Capture Integration with PeopleSoft Claims Presentment and Banking Transactions.*

This chapter describes how to integrate with PeopleSoft CRM insurance and financial industry solutions.

- *Working with Interactive Reports for PeopleSoft Order Capture.*

This chapter explains how to use analytics, such as order metrics reports and order revenue reports, to better understand the behavior of your order capture system.

PART III: PeopleSoft Order Capture Self Service

The PeopleSoft Order Capture Self Service part of the *PeopleSoft Enterprise Order Capture Applications 8.9 PeopleBook* contains the following chapters:

- *Defining PeopleSoft Order Capture Self Service Business Units.*

This chapter explains how to set up and define Order Capture Self Service business units.

- *Setting Up PeopleSoft Order Capture Self Service.*

This chapter explains how to set up PeopleSoft Order Capture Self Service.

- *Using Order Capture Self Service.*

This chapter explains how to use PeopleSoft Order Capture Self Service.

Part IV: PeopleSoft Mobile Order Capture

The PeopleSoft Mobile Order Capture part of the *PeopleSoft Enterprise CRM 8.9 Order Capture Applications PeopleBook* contains the following chapters:

- *Understanding PeopleSoft Mobile Order Capture.*

This chapter provides an overview of the business processes available in PeopleSoft Mobile Order Capture, and provides links to relevant mobile tools documentation. It also outlines the synchronization functionality that is available between the mobile solution and PeopleSoft Order Capture .

- *Setting Up PeopleSoft Mobile Order Capture.*

This chapter discusses how to implement and set up PeopleSoft Mobile Order Capture on your mobile device. The chapter includes a general checklist and a set of links to relevant mobile documentation (rather than reproducing that documentation).

- *Using PeopleSoft Mobile Order Capture.*

This chapter explains the features of PeopleSoft Mobile Order Capture.

PeopleSoft Enterprise CRM 8.9 Application Fundamentals PeopleBook

Essential information describing the setup and design of your CRM system appears in a companion volume of documentation called *PeopleSoft Enterprise CRM 8.9 Application Fundamentals PeopleBook*.

Note. Each PeopleSoft product line has its own version of this documentation.

The *PeopleSoft CRM 8.9 Application Fundamentals PeopleBook* contains topics that apply to many or all PeopleSoft applications across the CRM product line. Whether you implement a single application, some combination of applications within the product line, or the entire PeopleSoft CRM system, you should be familiar with the contents of this central PeopleBook. It is the starting point for fundamentals, such as setting up control tables and administering security.

See Also

PeopleSoft Enterprise CRM 8.9 Application Fundamentals PeopleBook

PeopleTools PeopleBooks

Cross-references to PeopleTools documentation refer to the PeopleTools 8.45 PeopleBooks.

PART 1

Order Capture Applications

Chapter 1

Getting Started with PeopleSoft Enterprise CRM Order Capture Applications

CHAPTER 1

Getting Started with PeopleSoft Enterprise CRM Order Capture Applications

This chapter provides an overview of PeopleSoft Enterprise Order Capture applications and discusses:

- PeopleSoft Order Capture business processes.
- PeopleSoft Order Capture process flow.
- PeopleSoft Order Capture integrations.
- PeopleSoft Order Capture, PeopleSoft Order Capture Self Service, and PeopleSoft Mobile Order Capture implementation.

Note. Although PeopleSoft Order Capture and PeopleSoft Order Capture Self Service are separately licensed applications, most references to business processes and implementation steps in this chapter apply equally to both applications.

PeopleSoft Enterprise Order Capture Applications Overview

PeopleSoft Customer Relationship Management (PeopleSoft CRM) offers several distinct applications each of which contributes to the interactive selling experience:

- *PeopleSoft Enterprise Order Capture.*

This internally facing application is a robust customer relationship management (CRM) order management tool that enables customer sales representatives (CSRs) or sales representatives to manage orders and quotes.

- *PeopleSoft Enterprise Order Capture Self Service.*

This externally facing application enables web users—such as brokers, business customers, and consumer customers—to easily create and manage their own orders and quotes.

- *PeopleSoft Enterprise Mobile Order Capture.*

This application enables PeopleSoft Order Capture users to synchronize orders and quotes to and from their disconnected mobile devices. It enables sales representatives to use disconnected laptops to enter orders and quotes, track orders and quotes, and view customer and product information. Mobile users can easily synchronize orders to and from the main PeopleSoft CRM server, and convert leads or opportunities from PeopleSoft Mobile Sales to a quote or order.

PeopleSoft Order Capture Applications Business Processes

This section discusses the business processes that you can perform using PeopleSoft Order Capture applications.

See *PeopleSoft Enterprise CRM 8.9 Mobile Applications PeopleBook*.

Business Processes for Order Capture Applications

PeopleSoft Order Capture applications utilize:

- The CRM customer data model (CDM, also referred to as the business object relationship model [BORM]).

The CDM (or BORM) is a powerful tool with which you can define the structure of your customer base and the relationships between various business entities such as companies, sites, partners, resellers, or consumer families. The BORM enables businesses with complex business models to define this data structure within their CRM systems, which controls system behavior, workflow, and business rules according to that definition.

See *PeopleSoft Enterprise CRM 8.9 Business Object Management PeopleBook*.

- The CRM product data model.

This data model enables the definition and creation of the products and services the PeopleSoft software will support. You have numerous options in doing so such as, dynamic packages, nested packages, product relationships, and complex configurations.

See *PeopleSoft Enterprise CRM 8.9 Product and Item Management PeopleBook*, “Setting Up Products”.

- PeopleSoft Enterprise Pricer.

This pricing tool uses the latest PeopleTools technologies to deliver a robust, high-performance engine. It integrates seamlessly with Order Capture applications to apply complex pricing structures and scenarios. PeopleSoft Enterprise Pricer has an intuitive user interface that is geared to use by your marketing managers.

See *PeopleSoft Enterprise Pricer 8.9 PeopleBook*, “PeopleSoft 8.9 Enterprise Pricer for CRM Preface”.

- CRM catalog.

CRM catalog functionality is available to Order Capture applications. With it, you can create region-specific catalogs, display template configurations, apply permission-filtering, and enable product comparisons. CRM catalogs integrate fully with PeopleSoft Order Capture, Order Capture Self Service, and PeopleSoft Advisor for the purpose of product, service, or solution recommendations. Additionally, Catalog Search employs the Verity search engine.

See *PeopleSoft Enterprise CRM 8.9 Product and Item Management PeopleBook*, “Creating Catalogs”.

PeopleSoft Order Capture

PeopleSoft Order Capture offers these features:

- Order and quote management.

PeopleSoft Order Capture delivers order and quote management functionality for both tangible and nontangible products, such as services. (For example, a monthly service agreement for cable television service is a service product.)

- PeopleSoft Order Capture workbenches.

PeopleSoft Order Capture workbenches are unique to the enterprise, and they perform three main functions. First, they are a central navigation point from which you can set up PeopleSoft Order Capture and Order Capture Self Service, after you have defined your business units. The system consolidates specific setup tasks into one of three workbenches: Setup Workbench, Capture Type Workbench, and Integration Workbench. These workbenches all appear in the Set Up CRM, Product Related, Order Capture menu.

Second, you can configure the ‘look and feel’ of the Order Capture runtime pages by defining and then selecting specific display templates.

Third, you can create application class sets and plug the logic of those application classes into a workbench feature to create new events for your order capture business process.

Note. The Customer Connection document “Understanding Application Classes in PeopleSoft Order Capture and PeopleSoft Order Capture Self Service” explains how to harness the power of application classes.

- Functional Area Navigation (FAN) pages, personalizations, and hotkeys.

CSRs can begin their interactive selling activities from a FAN page that provides one-click access to the main features of PeopleSoft Order Capture. Customer Service administrators can personalize the look and feel of the order entry form for CSRs and CSRs can use hotkeys for rapid data entry.

- Integration with fulfillment.

PeopleSoft Order Capture provides integration with both PeopleSoft and third party fulfillment systems or supply chain management products. For example, there is a tight integration with PeopleSoft Supply Chain Management (PeopleSoft SCM) so that order fulfillment and detailed maintenance activity is possible.

Note. Enterprise integration points (EIPs) support the sending and receiving of orders, quotes, product availability, and order status information.

- Order capture business projects.

Configurable business projects power order fulfillment. Business projects enable you to configure the phases, tasks, and events that occur once an order is submitted.

- Interactive Reports.

PeopleSoft Order Capture delivers instant, detailed business analytics information for revenue and metrics. User roles control access to enterprise-wide report information.

- Quick Create.

PeopleSoft Order Capture enables you to create customers, consumers, and contacts while you are in the midst of a transaction without having to navigate to the standard setup components to define customer information.

- Correspondence management.

PeopleSoft Order Capture can establish automatic correspondences using email or print for order or quote maintenance, or submission activity. Also, CSRs can generate correspondences manually by clicking the Send Correspondence button on the Entry Form page.

- Support for taxes, including value-added tax (VAT).

PeopleSoft Order Capture integrates with Taxware, Vertex, and WorldTax software applications to calculate and display tax information directly on order forms.

- Integration to Agreements.
- Integration with PeopleSoft Proposal Management.
- Bulk order creation and maintenance.
- Credit card integration.
- Freight integration with ConnectShip.

PeopleSoft Order Capture Self Service

In addition to most PeopleSoft Order Capture features, Order Capture Self Service delivers:

- Support for self-service registration and profile and address maintenance.
- A Contact Us feature that includes real-time chat with a CSR.

- Security roles and privileges that control what a self-service user sees.
- Quick entry, to enable the rapid creation of orders.
- Order tracking functionality.
- Other standard self-service features, such as Checkout and Shopping Cart.

PeopleSoft Mobile Order Capture

PeopleSoft Mobile Order Capture enables implementers and remote sales representatives to use laptops to:

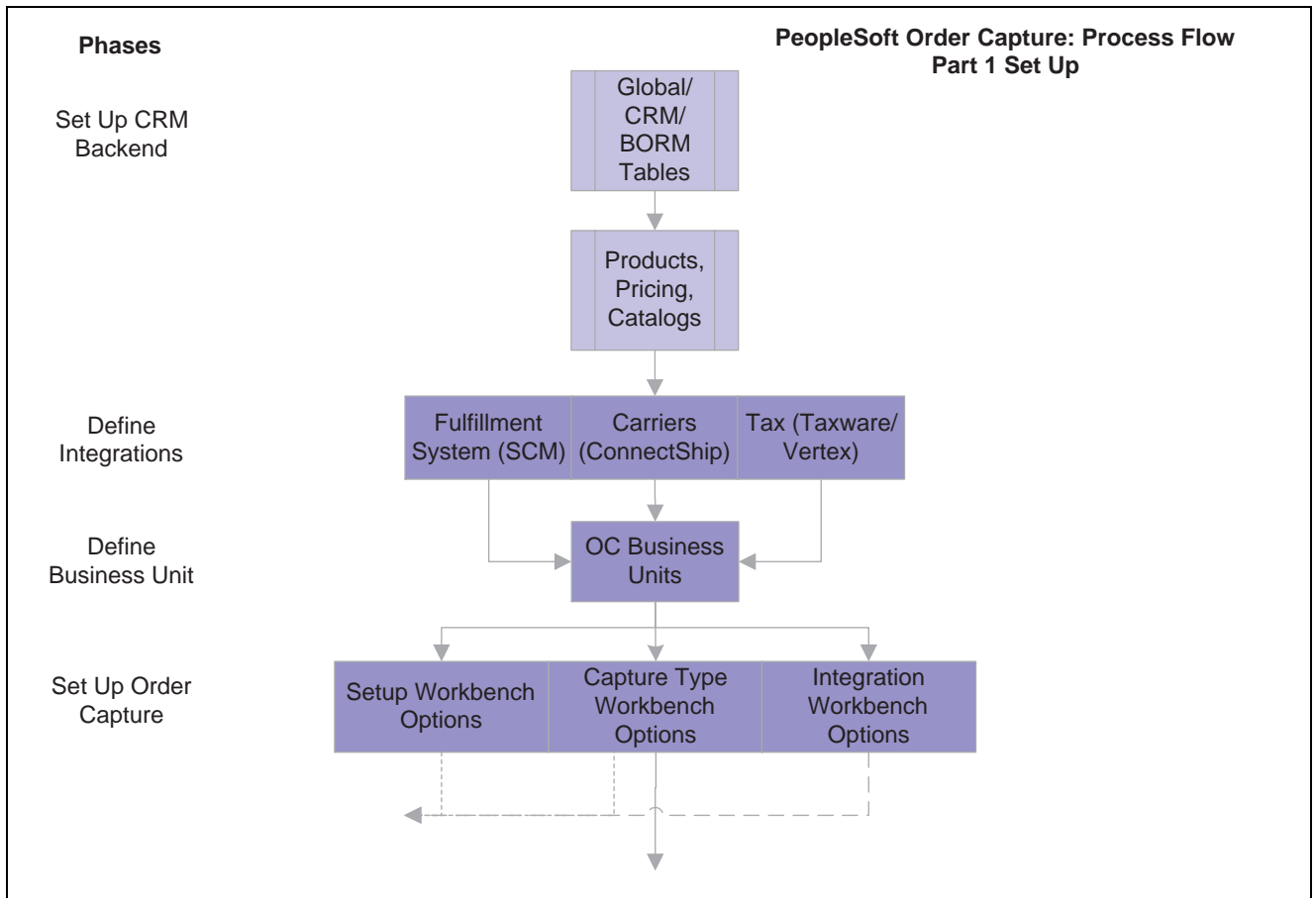
- (Implementers only) Configure synchronization rules and options, when in a connected environment.
- Search for products using a variety of criteria, such as product ID, description, or category.
- View product details, including images, notes, and attachments.
- View detailed product list price information.
- Search, view, and add products to quotes and orders.
- Search for quotes and orders.
- View quote and order line details.
- Add or view notes and attachments for products and orders.
- Submit orders and quotes.
- View holds.
- Convert sales leads or opportunities to quotes or orders.

See *PeopleSoft Enterprise CRM 8.9 Mobile Applications PeopleBook*.

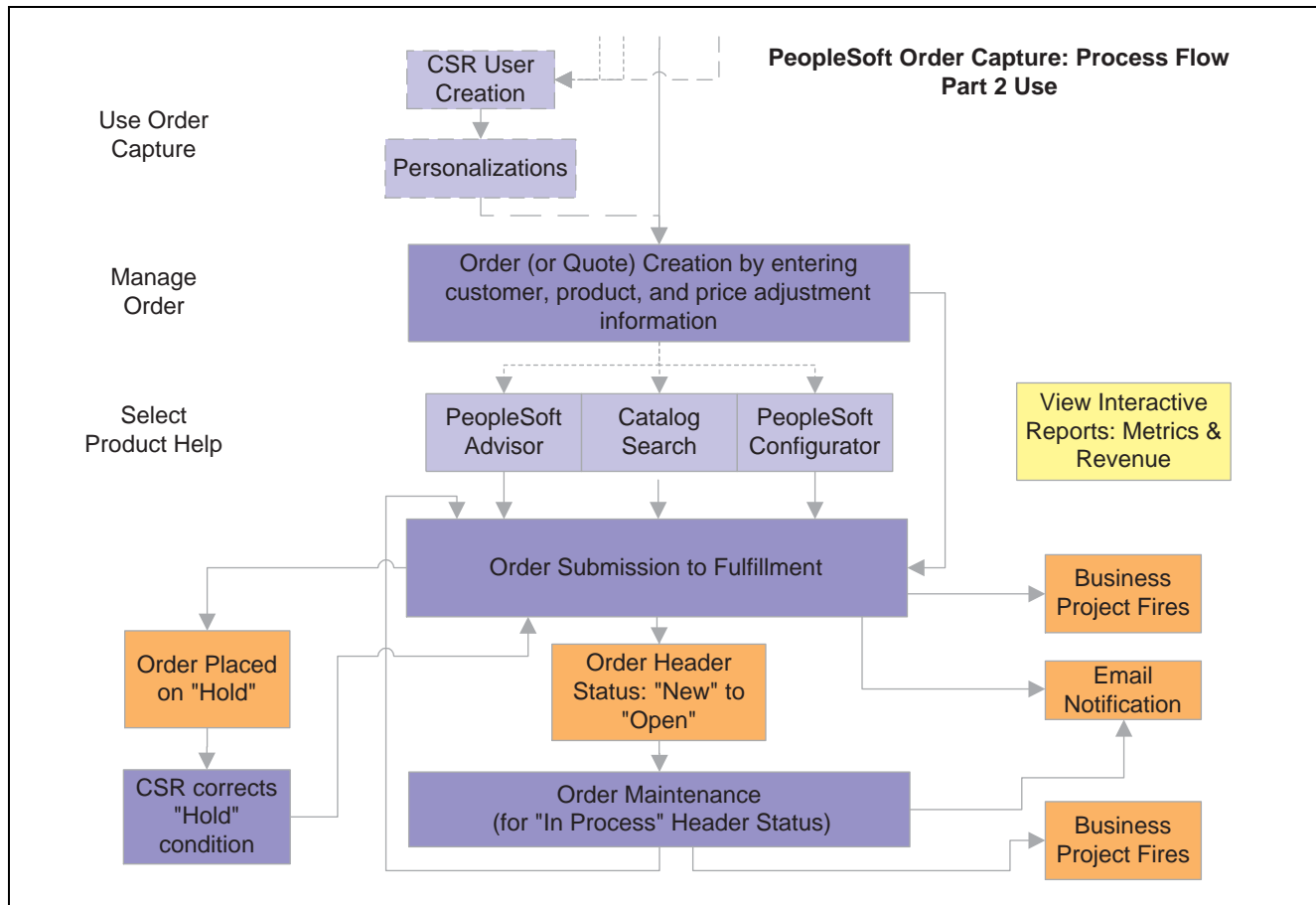
PeopleSoft Order Capture Process Flow

These diagrams illustrate the primary PeopleSoft Order Capture business processes. The diagrams identifies:

1. High-level implementation and setup tasks for which a PeopleSoft Order Capture implementer is responsible.
2. Main business processes available for use by a PeopleSoft Order Capture CSR:



PeopleSoft Order Capture process flow (setup)



PeopleSoft Order Capture process flow (use)

See Also

[Chapter 3, “Setting Up PeopleSoft Order Capture,” page 25](#)

[Chapter 8, “Managing Orders and Quotes,” page 113](#)

PeopleSoft Order Capture Integrations

PeopleSoft Order Capture integrates with most PeopleSoft CRM applications. Generally, this occurs in the form of other CRM applications channeling CSRs, call center agents, marketing managers, or sales representatives to the entry form where they can create an order or quote.

PeopleSoft CRM Applications

PeopleSoft Order Capture integrates directly with these PeopleSoft CRM features or applications:

- 360-Degree View.
- PeopleSoft Advanced Configurator.

This integration enables complex configuration of products directly from the order line.

- PeopleSoft FieldService.

PeopleSoft Order Capture provides support for both service order generation and installed products.

- PeopleSoft Marketing.

PeopleSoft Order Capture displays campaigns that are targeted to your customers.

- PeopleSoft Real-Time Advisor.

This integration enables CSRs to launch a PeopleSoft Advisor dialog and, using a question and answer session, match a buyer with a recommendation for a product, service, or solution.

- PeopleSoft Sales.

This integration supports the creation of a quote or order from a sales lead or opportunity.

- PeopleSoft Support.

This integration enables call center agents to generate a sale from a case.

- PeopleSoft Telemarketing.

This integration enables telemarketers to quickly convert a phone call opportunity into a sale.

External Applications

PeopleSoft Order Capture and Order Capture Self Service use EIPs to connect to fulfillment systems and other third-party applications. PeopleSoft CRM EIPs connect you to:

- PeopleSoft SCM or similar systems.

This integration enables order fulfillment.

- Credit Card EIP.

This enables integration with third-party credit card authorization and payment vendors directly from PeopleSoft Order Capture and Order Capture Self Service.

- Carriers and tax calculation systems.

Integration with ConnectShip (for freight) and Taxware or Vertex (for taxes) enables order capture applications to calculate freight, sales tax, and VAT directly from an order.

This table lists cross-references to third-party information:

| Third-Party Application | System Type | Company URL |
|-------------------------|-------------------------------|---|
| ConnectShip | Shipping cost calculation | http://connectship.com |
| Taxware | Sales and use tax calculation | http://www.taxware.com |
| Taxware | WorldTax | http://www.taxware.com/products/worldtax.html |
| Vertex | Sales and use tax calculation | http://www.vertexinc.com |

Note. Supplemental information about how to set up third-party application integrations is located on the PeopleSoft Customer Connection website.

PeopleSoft Order Capture Applications Implementation

PeopleSoft Setup Manager enables you to generate a list of setup tasks for your organization based on the features that you are implementing. The setup tasks include the components that you must set up, listed in the order in which you must enter data into the component tables, and links to the corresponding PeopleBook documentation.

PeopleSoft Order Capture applications also provide component interfaces to help you load data from your existing system into order capture tables. Use the Excel to Component Interface utility with the component interfaces to populate the tables.

This table lists all of the order capture components that have component interfaces:

| Component | Component Interface | Reference |
|--|------------------------|--|
| Order Capture component interfaces: | | |
| CARRIER | CARRIER_SCI_SCI | See Chapter 3, “Setting Up PeopleSoft Order Capture,” Setting Up Freight Integration, page 62. |
| RO_BUS_UNIT | RO_BUS_UNIT_SCI | |
| RO_CATALOG | RO_CATALOG_SCI | |
| RO_DEFN | RO_DEFN_SCI | See Chapter 3, “Setting Up PeopleSoft Order Capture,” Setting Up PeopleSoft Order Capture Tables, page 27. |
| RO_DEFN_INTEGRATE | RO_DEFN_INTEGRATE_SCI | |
| RO_DISPLAY_TEMPL | RO_DISPLAY_TEMPL_SCI | |
| RO_TYPE | RO_TYPE_SCI | See Chapter 3, “Setting Up PeopleSoft Order Capture,” Defining Order and Quote Processing, page 46. |
| Order Capture Self-Service component interfaces: | | |
| RB_SRTY_PRIV | RB_SRTY_PRIV_SCI | |
| RB_SRTY_PRIV_DELTA | RB_SRTY_PRIV_DELTA_SCI | |
| RB_SRTY_PRIV_DFLT | RB_SRTY_PRIV_DFLT_SCI | See <Xref to the component documentation>. |
| RX_GUEST_REG_TMPLT | RX_GUEST_REG_TMPLT_SCI | |
| RX_REP_REG_TABLE | RX_REP_REG_TABLE_SCI | |
| Mobile Order Capture component interface: | | |
| MOC_OC_OPTIONS_CMP | MOC_OC_OPTIONS_CMP_SCI | |

Other Sources of Information

In the planning phase of your implementation, take advantage of all PeopleSoft sources of information, including the installation guides, table-loading sequences, data models, and business process maps. A complete list of these resources appears in the preface in the *PeopleSoft Enterprise CRM 8.9 Application Fundamentals PeopleBook*, with information about where to find the most current version of each.

See Also

PeopleSoft Enterprise Setup Manager for Customer Relationship Management 8.9

PART 2

PeopleSoft Order Capture

Chapter 2
Defining PeopleSoft Order Capture Business Units

Chapter 3
Setting Up PeopleSoft Order Capture

Chapter 4
Understanding Product, Pricing, and Catalog Setup

Chapter 5
Working with PeopleSoft Order Capture Business Projects

Chapter 6
Integrating with Fulfillment and Billing Systems

Chapter 7
Working with PeopleSoft Service Management

Chapter 8
Managing Orders and Quotes

Chapter 9
Understanding Order Capture Integration with Policy and Claims Presentment and Banking Transactions

Chapter 10

Working with Interactive Reports for PeopleSoft Order Capture

CHAPTER 2

Defining PeopleSoft Order Capture Business Units

This chapter provides overviews of PeopleSoft business units and PeopleSoft Order Capture business units and discusses how to define PeopleSoft Order Capture business units.

Understanding PeopleSoft Business Units

A business unit is an operational subset of your organization. Each business unit has its own way of storing information and has its own processing guidelines. You can use one business unit for all cases, or you can divide operations based on whatever criteria makes the most sense. For example, you can create business units for different product lines or regions. PeopleSoft Order Capture transactions use business units as key identifiers. Once you determine how many business units you need and how to organize them, define them in the PeopleSoft Order Capture system.

Note. PeopleSoft implementation personnel can help you to define your appropriate business unit structure.

Define PeopleSoft business units in this basic order:

1. Define global PeopleSoft business units, if you run multiple PeopleSoft applications.
2. Define PeopleSoft Customer Relationship Management (PeopleSoft CRM) business units.
3. Link PeopleSoft business units and PeopleSoft CRM business units to PeopleSoft Order Capture.

Note. For example, you can create a business unit here, and connect that business unit to PeopleSoft Sales later.

Before you create multiple order capture business units, ensure that you understand tableset controls, which you use to determine values for fields on transactional pages.

Understanding PeopleSoft Order Capture Business Units

This section describes some of the essential traits of business units as applied to PeopleSoft Order Capture. This information can help you determine the best way to define business units for your implementation.

In PeopleSoft Order Capture, use order capture business units to drive the business process of creating and tracking orders that customer service representatives (CSRs), sales representatives, and self-service customers create. To implement PeopleSoft Order Capture, you must create order capture business units. These business units define processing rules to capture orders and enable the integration with other PeopleSoft applications, such as Order Management.

Note. For integration purposes, business unit definition records must be synchronized across all systems. Business unit definitions that you create in PeopleSoft CRM are available in PeopleSoft Supply Chain Management. You must make PeopleSoft Order Management and Inventory business unit definitions available to PeopleSoft CRM. To synchronize business unit records across your business enterprise, use the business unit enterprise integration point.

Defining PeopleSoft Order Capture Business Units

This section discusses how to create PeopleSoft Order Capture business units.

Note. In PeopleSoft Order Capture Self Service, you must define business unit settings on the Order Capture Definition and Self Service Options pages.

See Also

Chapter 11, “Defining PeopleSoft Order Capture Self Service Business Units,” page 173

Page Used to Define PeopleSoft Order Capture Business Units

| Page Name | Object Name | Navigation | Usage |
|--------------------------|--------------|--|---|
| Order Capture Definition | BUS_UNIT_RO1 | Set Up CRM, Business Unit Related, Order Capture Definition, Business Unit, Order Capture Definition | Create PeopleSoft Order Capture business units, update existing business units, and establish default business units. |

Creating PeopleSoft Order Capture Business Units

Access the Order Capture Definition page.

| Internal | | Self Service | |
|--|--|---|--|
| Business Unit US001 | | | |
| *Description US001 NEW YORK OPERATION: | | *Status Open | |
| *Short Description US001 | | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Default Business Unit <input type="checkbox"/> Submit Confirmation | |
| Business Unit | | | |
| FieldService US200 | | Marketing US001 | |
| Order Management US001 | | Proposal Management | |
| Contracts | | General Ledger | |
| Tax Settings | | | |
| *Tax Vendor None | | Company PSFT | |
| Order Origin New Jersey Operations | | Division | |
| Order Acceptance California Location | | Store Location | |
| Order Capture | | | |
| *Freight Vendor None | | *Card Vendor None | |
| Ship From Connecticut Operations | | Source Phone | |
| Preferred Carrier | | Capture Priority Medium | |
| Quote Conversion Warning No Warning | | Base Currency US Dollar | |
| *Site Address Includes Customer Bill To Addresses | | Rate Type Average | |
| Fulfillment Specialist Email | | Credit Rating Value | |
| Catalog Refresh (Minutes) | | Quote Valid For 30 Days Quote Due 5 | |
| Bill Type Identifier | | Bill Source | |
| Default Service Duration Months | | Quote Conversion Convert to Order and Subm | |

Order Capture Definition page: Internal tab (1 of 2)

| | | |
|---|--|--|
| Order Change Notifications Accepted <input type="text" value="Notify CSR Only"/> Partially Accepted <input type="text" value="Notify CSR and Customer"/> Rejected <input type="text" value="Notify CSR and Customer"/> | | Advisor Dialogs <input type="checkbox"/> Display Session Information |
| Bulk Order Consumer Hierarchy <input type="text" value="CONS_HIERARCHY"/> <input type="button" value="Q"/> Organization Hierarchy <input type="text" value="CUST_HIERARCHY"/> <input type="button" value="Q"/> | | |
| Catalog Display Options <div> <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Display By Customer <input type="text" value="1"/> </div> <div> <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Display By Partner Contact <input type="text" value="2"/> </div> <div> <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Display By User <input type="text" value="3"/> </div> <div> <input type="checkbox"/> Display Browse Catalog </div> | | |
| Modified 06/30/2003 11:39AM PDT ASETH | | |
| <div> <input type="button" value="Save"/> <input type="button" value="Return to Search"/> <input type="button" value="Add"/> <input type="button" value="Update/Display"/> </div> | | |

Order Capture Definition page: Internal tab (2 of 2)

Business Unit

Displays the business unit that you entered to access the page.

Note. If your company uses more than one PeopleSoft application and defines the same business units across applications, use the same name for business units that are designed to share the same setID.

Description

Enter a description of the business unit. This description appears on the Order Capture Entry Form page and in other places where the business unit appears.

Status

Select an *Open* or *Closed* status. You cannot process transactions for a closed business unit.

Short Description

Enter a brief description of the business unit. This description appears on the Order Capture Entry Form page and in other places where the business unit appears.

Default Business Unit

Select to define this business unit as the default business unit. If no business unit is defined in User Preferences, the system uses the default business unit that you identify here.

Note. The system displays this check box only after you create a business unit.

Note. The product search and catalog search features also use the default business unit.

Default Set ID

Enter the setID that determines your preliminary tableset sharing setup. This setID determines the setIDs that the system assigns to each record group for the new business unit, and the setID that is assigned to a record group determines the tableset that provides values for the business unit. If

you enter an existing setID, the system copies the set control definition of that business unit to the new business unit.

Note. The system displays this field only when you open the page in Add a New Business Unit mode. This field disappears when you create the business unit.

Submit Confirmation

Select to view a confirmation page once an order or quote has been submitted. If the submission was successful, the CSR can either return to the order or quote just submitted, or begin to create a new order or quote. If the submission was placed on hold, the CSR is able to link directly to the Holds page.

If you clear this option, the system populates the header statuses automatically, and the Submit Confirmation page does not appear.

Create BU (create business unit)

Click to establish the setID controls for the order capture business unit based on the default setID that you specify.

Note. The system displays this button only when you open the page in Add a New Business Unit mode. This field disappears when you create the business unit.

Business Unit

Field Service

Enter the PeopleSoft FieldService business unit that will map to this order capture business unit.

Note. When ordering a product that requires installation, a service order is created in this PeopleSoft FieldService business unit.

Marketing

Enter the PeopleSoft Marketing business unit that will map to this order capture business unit. PeopleSoft Order Capture displays campaign offers that are associated with this Marketing business unit.

Order Management

Enter the PeopleSoft Order Management business unit that will map to this Order Capture business unit. PeopleSoft Order Capture maps to this Order Management business unit for order fulfillment.

Proposal Management

Select the PeopleSoft Proposal Management business unit with which PeopleSoft Order Capture integrates.

Note. PeopleSoft Proposal Management is part of a suite of Enterprise Service Automation (ESA) applications, within PeopleSoft Financial Management Solutions' product line. PeopleSoft CRM has added the ability to send PeopleSoft Proposal Management information when an engagement service product is included in a quote. This enhancement also includes the ability to receive pricing information when an engagement is fulfilled in PeopleSoft Proposal Management.

Contracts

Enter the PeopleSoft Contracts business unit that will map to this Order Capture business unit. This only applies if you wish to take advantage of the integration from PeopleSoft Order Capture to PeopleSoft's billing system.

General Ledger

Enter the PeopleSoft General Ledger business unit that will map to this Order Capture business unit. This will allow the PeopleSoft General Ledger application to record billing information.

Note. This only applies if you wish to take advantage of the integration between PeopleSoft Order Capture and PeopleSoft's billing system.

Tax Settings**Tax Vendor**

Select a tax vendor. If you select *Taxware*, *Vertex*, or *WorldTax*, PeopleSoft Order Capture integrates with the relevant third-party system for tax calculations. If you want value-added tax to be part of your pricing calculations during order entry, select *WorldTax*. If you select *None*, the system does not calculate taxes when creating orders or quotes.

Note. You cannot show tax on an order or quote unless you select a vendor.

Test Tax Interlink

Click to verify that the tax integration is functioning correctly.

Note. Your business interlink must be properly configured prior to a test of the integration.

Company and Division

Enter codes that Taxware and Vertex use for reporting and tax calculation purposes. Check your vendor's documentation for further information.

Order Origin

Enter the business unit where sales orders originate. Taxware references this location to calculate sales taxes for local jurisdictions that use this information in their taxing practices. Check the Taxware documentation for further information.

Order Acceptance

Enter the business unit where orders are accepted. Both Taxware and Vertex reference this location to calculate sales taxes. Check the Taxware or Vertex documentation for further information.

Store Location

(Optional) Enter the Store Location parameter used by third party tax vendors. This is a 10-character maximum field.

Order Capture**Freight Vendor**

Select a freight vendor type. Values are:

None: No freight is calculated on the order.

External: Order information is passed to an external vendor such as ConnectShip, and the calculated freight amount appears on the order.

Test Freight

Click this link to verify that the freight integration is functioning correctly.

Card Vendor

Select a card vendor. If you select *3rd party*, the system submits credit card information to a third-party system for credit card authorization processing.

Ship From

Enter a ship-from location, assuming that all products ship from this location. This information is used when calculating taxes and freight costs.

| | |
|-------------------------------------|--|
| Source | Enter an informational code that identifies the source of the order. For example, you could specify <i>Phone</i> if you receive most orders for this business unit by telephone. |
| | <hr/> Note. The CSR can change this field's default value. <hr/> |
| Preferred Carrier | Select the default carrier that you want to use when creating orders or quotes. |
| Capture Priority | Select a capture priority of <i>Urgent</i> , <i>High</i> , <i>Medium</i> , or <i>Low</i> to specify the default priority for all orders that are created in the business unit. You can change the priority during order creation. |
| Quote Conversion Warning | Unless specified on the business unit definition, a quote that is converted to an order will automatically be submitted. When a quote that contains an engagement service product is converted, the engagement service is updated in the PeopleSoft Proposal Management system. If you want to display a warning for the CSR which indicates that the quote that is about to be converted to an order contains at least one Engagement Service product, then select <i>Display Warning</i> . If you want to bypass the warning, select <i>No Warning</i> . |
| Base Currency | Enter the default currency. A base currency is required for the business unit, even if you are not transacting in foreign currencies. |
| Site Address Includes | Select an order capture site address. The selection here includes all existing site addresses for a customer. You can increase the number of addresses available during order entry. Values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>site addresses only</i>: Displays site addresses only. <hr/> Note. This is the default selection. <hr/> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>all customer addresses</i>: Displays the existing site addresses plus all other customer addresses. • <i>customer Bill To addresses</i>: Displays the existing site addresses plus any billing addresses. • <i>customer Ship To addresses</i>: Displays the existing site addresses plus any shipping addresses. |
| Rate Type | Select the method that the system uses to set the exchange rate between currencies for PeopleSoft Order Capture transactions. |
| Fulfillment Specialist Email | Enter an email address to which an email is sent if you create an order that contains a literature-type product. |
| Credit Rating Value | Enter a minimum credit rating value. If the customer's credit rating is less than this amount, the order that is associated with that customer is automatically placed on hold. |
| Catalog Refresh (minutes) | Enter the wanted catalog refresh interval amount in minutes. When you view the product catalog, the system automatically checks when the last refresh occurred. If the interval since the last refresh is greater than the time that you enter here, the system forces a refresh. |

| | |
|---------------------------------|---|
| Quote Valid For | <p>Enter the default number of days for which a quote is valid after the creation date. The system adds this number to the quote creation date to calculate the expiration date. Once the expiration date passes, the status changes to <i>Expired</i>.</p> <hr/> <p>Note. You cannot convert expired quotes to orders.</p> <hr/> |
| Days Quote Due | <p>Enter the number of days that the system automatically adds to the quote creation date to indicate a final date by which a quote should be converted to an order. A quote's due date is then set to the resulting date. For example, if you want quotes to elapse 30 days after creation, enter <i>30</i> here.</p> <hr/> <p>Note. The number that you define here does not appear on the quote itself.</p> <hr/> |
| Bill Type Identifier | <p>Select the bill type that you want associated with the setID. The bill type prompts on all bill type identifier codes that are synchronized from PeopleSoft Billing. The bill type identifier is a user-defined value in PeopleSoft Billing. PeopleSoft Order Capture delivers CRM _ORDER as sample data.</p> <hr/> <p>Note. On the Billing and Pricing Options page, the Bill Type field is optional. If it is not defined in PeopleSoft CRM, the billing plan in PeopleSoft Contracts sets the field based on the PeopleSoft Contracts business unit.</p> <hr/> |
| Bill Source | <p>Select the bill source that you want associated with the setID. The bill source prompts on all bill source identifier codes that are synchronized from PeopleSoft Billing. The bill source code is a user-defined value in PeopleSoft Billing. PeopleSoft Order Capture delivers CRM _ORDER as sample data.</p> <hr/> <p>Note. On the Billing and Pricing Options page, the Bill Source field is optional. If it is not defined in PeopleSoft CRM, the billing plan in PeopleSoft Contracts sets the field based on the PeopleSoft Contracts business unit.</p> <hr/> |
| Default Service Duration | <p>For a service, we specify a start date and an end date on an order. The end date is calculated by adding the duration to the start date. If you have not specified a duration on the product definition, the order will pick up the duration from this field. Duration is the numeric value plus the quantifier, which is either <i>days</i>, <i>months</i>, <i>quarters</i>, <i>weeks</i>, or <i>years</i>.</p> |
| Quote Conversion | <p>Select <i>Convert to Order Only</i> if you want to give the CSR the chance to modify an order prior to submission. Select <i>Convert to Order and Submit</i> if you want quotes that are converted to orders to automatically be submitted. This is the default selection.</p> <hr/> <p>Note. Your selection here will apply to all orders placed from this business unit.</p> <hr/> |

Order Change Notifications

The system can send order change notifications to specified parties when order maintenance occurs, and PeopleSoft Order Capture receives a message from the fulfillment system.

| | |
|---|--|
| Accepted, Partially Accepted, and Rejected | <p>Select the recipients that you want PeopleSoft Order Capture to notify when the fulfillment system informs PeopleSoft CRM that order changes have been fully accepted, partially accepted, or rejected. Values are:</p> |
|---|--|

- *Notify CSR Only.*
- *Notify CSR and Customer.*
- *Notify Customer Only.*
- *Notify Nobody.*

Advisor Dialogs

Display Session Information

Select to display the Advisor Dialog Session information when a dialog is accessed from Internal Order Capture. If not selected, the Advisor Dialog Session information will not appear when a dialog is accessed.

Bulk Order

On the Order Capture Definition page you will plug in relationship views for both consumers and organizations. Your master order/recipient order relationships are determined by the relationships you have established in the Relationship Viewer. Therefore, you must first define your relationship views in Set Up CRM, Common Definitions, Customer, Configure Relationship Views.

Consumer Hierarchy

Select a relationship view for a single consumer, or contact. This will determine all of the possible bulk order recipients at runtime by automatically populating all of the child relationships for the parent chosen here.

Multiple Orders Per Recipient

Select this check box if you want to allow single recipients to receive more than one order. An Order field appears on the runtime page, allowing you to enter the number of orders you want to specify per recipient.

Organization Hierarchy

Select a relationship view for the company, or organization. When the end user enters a company name, it will prompt against the table you select here to determine the child relationships available.

Catalog Display Options

The system can send order change notifications to specified parties when order maintenance occurs, and PeopleSoft Order Capture receives a message from the fulfillment system.

Display Browse Catalog

Select this check box to display the browse catalog along with the search tree hierarchy while searching in PeopleSoft Order Capture.

Display Catalogs By User, Display Catalogs By Customer, and Display Catalogs By Partner

Select the checkbox to indicate if catalogs should be displayed by User, by Customer or by Partner

Note. When catalogs are displayed from the order, the list of authorized catalogs can vary depending on the selected partner, customer, and user logged in.

When a partner or customer is not selected on the order, the list of authorized catalogs will depend strictly on the user logged in. In that case, only catalogs that the user is specifically authorized for will be available.

Priority

Select the priority to determine which catalog is displayed. The priority indicates which catalog takes precedence if more than one mode qualifies.

CHAPTER 3

Setting Up PeopleSoft Order Capture

This chapter provides overviews of PeopleSoft Order Capture setup, toolbar configuration, and application class set creation; lists common elements; and discusses how to:

- Set up PeopleSoft Order Capture tables.
- Define order and quote processing.
- Define integrations and mappings.
- Set up credit card integration.
- Set up freight integration.
- Define tax installation options.

Understanding PeopleSoft Order Capture Setup

PeopleSoft Order Capture is configurable and supports industry solutions without a need to modify application logic. This is achieved through configuration of the order capture entry forms and order capture business processing logic. Order maintenance functionality, in particular, requires configuration capabilities to enable you to determine the states at which an order capture is eligible for maintenance (change or cancelation).

Consequently, the majority of PeopleSoft Order Capture setup is consolidated into three individual workbenches:

- Setup
- Capture Type
- Integration

After you define toolbar preferences, create application class sets, and set up third-party integrations, you can perform all of your remaining setup tasks here as well.

The three workbenches bring together most setup elements. Together, they allow for robust configuration of the capture forms and the business logic. You can configure workbenches by capture type, such as order, quote, service management, and so forth. For example, capture types can take on different forms and different business processing logic.

You can configure and control order maintenance activities by capture status, at both the header and the line levels. Aesthetics are also controlled here, as you configure presentation and labeling of capture forms by type, as well.

Note. Although these workbenches essentially combine both mandatory and optional steps, it is not *required* that you perform any setup steps if you apply the delivered system data. This system data prepopulates all of the workbench pages, and the values comprise all of the workbench settings that are necessary to get your PeopleSoft Order Capture system up and running.

Understanding Toolbar Configuration

You can configure the toolbar that you use for order and quote processing as well as the subtabs and page labels that appear on the order entry forms. The toolbar feature offers users a simple way to navigate from the component page that they are currently on to different page sections within the same component. You can set up the toolbar so that, in an order form, users can jump from one area to another—such as from Billing on the Order Entry form to Interaction History on the History page—simply by selecting the relevant name.

This table summarizes toolbar configuration features:

| Feature | Description |
|-----------------------------|---|
| Toolbar buttons | Toolbar buttons include PeopleTools actions and PeopleSoft Order Capture specific actions. Buttons such as Save, Refresh, Add, Next in List, Previous in List, Return to Search, and Update/Display map to corresponding buttons in PeopleTools. PeopleSoft Order Capture buttons perform application-specific actions, such as cloning an order. |
| Page subtabs | Page subtabs are links that appear on a component page above the toolbar. Each subtab links to sections of a page that are defined based on a page's group boxes. In PeopleSoft Order Capture, you can use page subtabs to provide users with quick access to different page sections and to control the availability of information on a page. |
| Toolbar configuration | You can choose which toolbar elements to display and arrange them in any sequence. You can also modify the definitions of the delivered toolbar buttons or use application classes to create new buttons. |
| Personalization by end user | PeopleSoft Order Capture users, such as customer service representatives (CSRs), can personalize the toolbar by selecting which buttons appear on it. Personalized configurations are associated with user IDs and do not affect the base toolbar definition. As an administrator, during setup, you decide whether users can personalize toolbars and specify the buttons in the toolbar that these users can hide in the personalization process. |

See Also

PeopleSoft Enterprise CRM 8.9 Automation and Configuration Tools PeopleBook, “Configuring Toolbars”

Understanding Application Class Set Creation

PeopleSoft Order Capture uses the application class registry to store references to processing logic for PeopleSoft Order Capture. Existing PeopleSoft Order Capture application classes handle processing for the main order and quote classes, as well as industry-specific extensions.

To register, or create, classes, you must enter the full class path into the application class registry. Once the system stores this information, you can dynamically instantiate the class through PeopleCode. The registry enables you to create subclasses of the main class and substitute your classes for the main class. PeopleSoft Order Capture uses this registry to dynamically invoke the logic that is required for each capture type. PeopleSoft Customer Relationship Management (PeopleSoft CRM) industry-specific applications invoke different logic from PeopleSoft Order Capture. You can create and register your own classes without modifying the delivered extensions.

Common Elements Used in This Chapter



Click to clone a workbench page to a different setID.



Click to proceed to the next item in the list.



Click to return to the previous item in the list.



Click to return to the main page.

Setting Up PeopleSoft Order Capture Tables

The Setup Workbench enables users to view a summary of all of the setup tables that are required for PeopleSoft Order Capture.

This section provides an overview of multichannel framework (MCF) types, lists common elements, and discusses how to:

- Access PeopleSoft Order Capture setup tables.
- Define charge frequencies.
- Define charge types.
- Create data event handlers.
- Define hold codes.
- Define hold denial codes.
- Create dynamic events.
- Define header statuses.

- Create line actions.
- Create line status types.
- Create line statuses.
- Create line statuses dropdowns.
- Define MCF types.
- Define note origins.
- Define note types.
- Create note visibility.
- Define priorities.
- Define source codes.
- Define mapping frequencies.

Understanding MCF Types

PeopleSoft Order Capture enables you to send communication to customers from within the application. Order Capture can also send communications automatically when an order or quote is submitted or maintained. To do this, you must define correspondence templates and packages in advance. PeopleSoft delivers sample Order Confirmation, Quote Confirmation, and Order Maintenance templates and packages out of the box.

Specific PeopleSoft Order Capture MCF templates are marked for use with print correspondence, email correspondence, or both. Use these templates to generate email or print notifications from key transactions, such as an order or quote.

Note. PeopleSoft Order Capture templates comprise both static text and tokens. Tokens represent key data (product ID, price, order ID, and so on) from the PeopleSoft Order Capture system.

PeopleSoft Order Capture delivers these sample MCF templates for major transactions:

- Order Confirmation.
- Quote Confirmation.
- Order Maintenance.
- Order Status.

Note. This correspondence package is used only when automatically responding to a structured email that was sent from an external source.

- Order Status Failed.

Note. This correspondence package is used only when responding to an invalid structured email request.

You can define additional MCF types for PeopleSoft Order Capture on the MCF Types (multichannel framework types) page.

Common Elements Used in This Section

Application Class ID Enter the PeopleTools application class ID that is stored in the PSAPPCLASSDEFN table.

Package Tree Viewer Click to access the Application Packages Lookup page and select an application class. The system populates the Application Class ID and Application Class Path fields according to the class that you select.

Note. This is the highest-level package that contains this class. You can retrieve values through the Application Package Designer.

Pages Used to Set Up PeopleSoft Order Capture Tables

| Page Name | Object Name | Navigation | Usage |
|----------------------|-----------------|---|---|
| Capture Setup Tables | RO_DEFN | Set Up CRM, Product Related, Order Capture, Setup Workbench, Capture Setup Tables | Access PeopleSoft Order Capture setup tables. |
| Charge Frequencies | RO_DEFN_CHGFREQ | Click the Charge Frequencies link on the Capture Setup Tables page. | Define charge frequencies. |
| Charge Types | RO_DEFN_CHGTYPE | Click the Charge Types link on the Capture Setup Tables page. | Define charge types. |
| Data Event Handlers | RO_DEFN_DATAELM | Click the Data Event Handlers link on the Capture Setup Tables page. | Create data event handlers. Here you define application class references that are dynamically called for the purpose of auditing system and user actions. These references also control the processing for order maintenance. |
| Hold Codes | RO_DEFN_HOLD | Click the Hold Codes link on the Capture Setup Tables page. | Define hold codes. |
| Hold Denial Codes | RO_DEFN_HLD_DEN | Click the Hold Denial Codes link on the Capture Setup Tables page. | Define hold denial codes. |
| Dynamic Events | RO_DEFN_DYEVENT | Click the Dynamic Events link on the Capture Setup Tables page. | Create dynamic events. Define application class references that are dynamically called for the purpose of providing plug-and-play processing during component processing. |

| Page Name | Object Name | Navigation | Usage |
|-----------------------|-----------------|---|---|
| Header Statuses | RO_DEFN_HDSTAT | Click the Header Statuses link on the Capture Setup Tables page. | Define header statuses that correspond with your business process. |
| Line Actions | RO_DEFN_LNACTN | Click the Line Actions link on the Capture Setup Tables page. | Create line actions such as Add, Remove, and Suspend. Capture type lines use these actions. |
| Line Status Types | RO_DEFN_LS_TYPE | Set Up CRM, Product Related, Order Capture, Setup Workbench, Capture Setup Tables Click the Line Status Types link on the Capture Setup Tables page. | View or edit engagement service line status types. |
| Line Statuses | RO_DEFN_LNSTAT | Click the Line Statuses link on the Capture Setup Tables page. | Create line statuses that correspond with your business processes. |
| Line Status DropDowns | RO_DEFN_LNPRMPT | Set Up CRM, Product Related, Order Capture, Setup Workbench, Capture Setup Tables Click the Line Status DropDowns link on the Capture Setup Tables page. | Control or view the dropdowns available for your engagement service products. |
| MCF Types | RO_DEFN_MCFTYPE | Click the MCF Types link on the Capture Setup Tables page. | Define MCF types, such as print or email. |
| Note Origins | RO_DEFN_NOTORIG | Click the Note Origins link on the Capture Setup Tables page. | Define note origins. |
| Note Types | RO_DEFN_NOTTYPE | Click the Note Types link on the Capture Setup Tables page. | Define note types. |
| Note Visibility | RO_DEFN_NOTVSBL | Click the Note Visibility link on the Capture Setup Tables page. | Create note visibility. |
| Priorities | RO_DEFN_PRIORTY | Click the Priorities link on the Capture Setup Tables page. | Define priorities for orders. |
| Source Codes | RO_DEFN_SOURCE | Click the Source Codes link on the Capture Setup Tables page. | Define source codes—such as phone, web, and fax—for inbound capture requests. |
| Frequency Mappings | RO_DEFN_SCHDMAP | Click the Frequency Mappings link on the Capture Setup Tables page. | Map recurring price frequency in PeopleSoft CRM to a schedule in PeopleSoft Contracts. |

Accessing PeopleSoft Order Capture Setup Tables

To define access PeopleSoft Order Capture setup tables, use the Capture Setup Tables (RO_DEFN_GBL) component.

Access the Capture Setup Tables page.

Capture Setup Tables

Workbench

Save Refresh Clone Search Next Previous Workbench Personalize

Description Core Setup Data SetID SHARE

This workbench allows users to view a summary of all the setup tables required for the Order Capture application. Click the details link to add or update specific setup data.

Workbench Details

*Description Core Setup Data

Workbench Steps

| Details | Progress |
|----------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1: Capture Setup Tables | 2 of 2 required fields completed. |
| 2: Charge Frequencies | 5 Charge Frequencies |
| 3: Charge Types | 5 Charge Types |
| 4: Data Event Handlers | 14 Data Event Handlers |
| 5: Hold Codes | 40 Hold Codes |
| 6: Hold Denial Codes | 3 Hold Denial Codes |
| 7: Dynamic Events | 4 Dynamic Events |
| 8: Header Statuses | 10 Header Statuses |
| 9: Line Actions | 3 Line Actions |
| 10: Line Status Types | 2 Line Status Types |
| 11: Line Statuses | 28 Line Statuses |
| 12: Line Statuses DropDown | 10 Line Statuses DropDown |
| 13: MCF Types | 6 MCF Types |
| 14: Note Origins | 5 Note Origins |
| 15: Note Types | 11 Note Types |
| 16: Note Visibility | 3 Note Visibility |
| 17: Priorities | 4 Priorities |
| 18: Source Codes | 5 Source Codes |
| 19: Frequency Mappings | 3 Frequency Mappings |

Capture Setup Tables page

Note. A user must enter a setID in order to view this page in Add mode.

Details

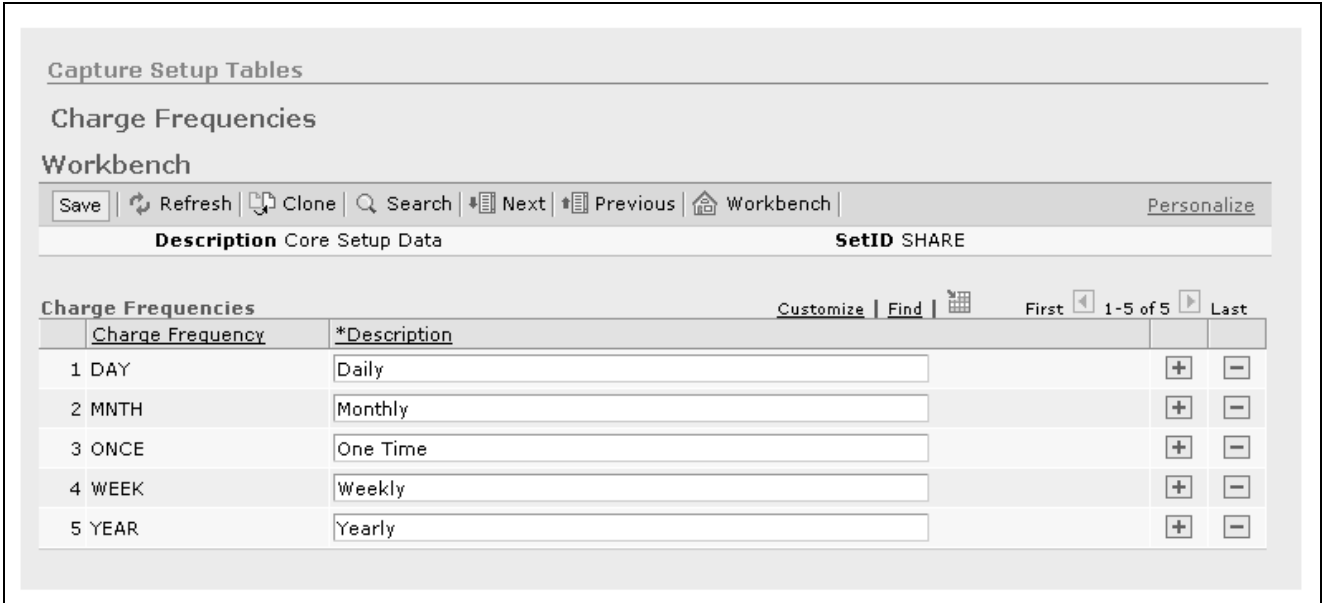
Click the link in the Details column to view, create, or modify values for each PeopleSoft Order Capture setup table.

Progress

In the Progress column, the system displays the number of rows of data defined for each of the steps listed in the details column.

Defining Charge Frequencies

Access the Charge Frequencies page.



Charge Frequencies page

Charge frequencies are defined per product, and they represent the frequency of a recurring charge. In PeopleSoft Order Capture, these frequencies appear on the order entry form in the Totals section.

Note. If you define a recurring price and charge frequency for a product in a price list or in the product model, then that frequency and recurring price also appear in the Totals section of the order entry form.

| | |
|-------------------------|--|
| Charge Frequency | Displays the code for the frequency of the recurring charge. |
| Description | Displays the description of the recurring charge’s frequency. This field is visible to the end user. |

Defining Charge Types

Access the Charge Types page.

Capture Setup Tables

Charge Types

Workbench

Save | Refresh | Clone | Search | Next | Previous | Workbench | Personalize

Description Core Setup Data **SetID** SHARE

Charge Types Customize | Find | First 1-5 of 5 Last

| Charge Type | *Description | | |
|-------------|-----------------------|---|---|
| 1 DISC | Discount | + | - |
| 2 SHIP | Shipping | + | - |
| 3 SRCG | Surcharge | + | - |
| 4 TAX | Tax | + | - |
| 5 VAT | Value Added Tax (VAT) | + | - |

Charge Types page

In PeopleSoft Order Capture, charge types appear in the Totals section of the order entry form. Charge types are additional charges or discounts (such as shipping and taxes) that are applied to the order.

Charge Type Displays the system code for the charge type.

Description Displays the description of the charge type. This field is visible to the user.

Creating Data Event Handlers

Access the Data Event Handlers page.

Capture Setup Tables

Data Event Handlers

Workbench

Save | Refresh | Clone | Search | Next | Previous | Workbench | Personalize

Description Core Setup Data **SetID** SHARE

Data Elements Find | View All | First 1 of 14 Last

***Description** LineGeneral + -

Data Element Processing

Specify the Application Class that controls the dynamic component processing. Classes specified here must extend RO_CAPTURE:BusinessLogic:Abstract:DataElement

Application Class ID CaptureLineGeneral Package Tree Viewer

Application Class Path RO_CAPTURE:BusinessLogic:DataEler

Data Event Handlers page

See Also

PeopleSoft Enterprise CRM 8.9 Automation and Configuration Tools PeopleBook, “Using Application Classes”

Defining Hold Codes

Access the Hold Codes page.

Capture Setup Tables

Hold Codes

Workbench

Save

Refresh

Clone

Search

Next

Previous

Workbench

Personalize

Description

Core Setup Data

SetID

SHARE

Hold Codes

Find

View All

First

1 of 40

Last

Hold Code

ADRBIL

+ -

*Level

Header

Allow Manual Change To Status

*Description

Bill to address is inactive

Long Description

Hold triggered when the bill to address is inactive.

↑

↓

Applies To

☒ Non-partner orders placed by an enterprise user

☒ Partner orders placed by an enterprise user

☒ Orders placed by partner user

Hold Processing

Specify the Application Class that controls the processing for this hold. Classes specified here must extend RO_CAPTURE:BusinessLogic:Abstract:HoldValidation

Application Class ID

BillToAddressHold

Package Tree Viewer

Application Class Path

RO_CAPTURE_TYPES:Core:HoldValida

↑

↓

Hold Codes page

Set up hold codes to create hold logic that fires when you submit a specific capture type for processing. These codes are created as extensions of a base hold validation class so that they are dynamically created and carried out. You can add configurable hold logic here without additional system configuration.

Add a new class in the RO_CAPTURE_TYPES application package for each hold code that you add. The new class performs the hold validation.

Hold Codes

- Hold Code

Displays a unique code identifier.
- Level

Select the level of the capture data for which this hold will be triggered. This determines the type of data that is passed to the hold check. If you select *Header*, the system evaluates header-level holds once per capture. If you select *Line*, the system evaluates line-level holds once per capture line.

Allow Manual Change To Status

Select to enable a user to manually change the status of (or remove) this hold when it is triggered. If the hold is absolutely required in this condition, clear this check box. For example, if a billing customer is not specified on an order, a CSR should not be permitted to simply remove this hold; the CSR should perform a corrective action to remove the hold. In this example, the CSR must return to the order and specify a bill-to customer.

Applies To

Holds can be defined differently for the enterprise user (usually CSR), and the partner user. Holds can also be different where the order is placed on behalf of a partner. You can select any combination of the three offerings.

Select *Non-partner orders placed by an enterprise user* if you want to apply the defined holds to regular orders placed by a CSR or non-partner orders. Select *Partner orders placed by an enterprise user* if you want to apply the holds to orders entered on behalf of a partner. Select *Orders placed by partner user* to apply the holds to orders submitted by partners.

See Also

PeopleSoft Enterprise CRM 8.9 Automation and Configuration Tools PeopleBook, “Using Application Classes”

Defining Hold Denial Codes

Access the Hold Denial Codes page.

The screenshot shows the 'Hold Denial Codes' page in PeopleSoft. The page has a header 'Capture Setup Tables' and a sub-header 'Hold Denial Codes'. Below this is a 'Workbench' section with various action buttons: Save, Refresh, Clone, Search, Next, Previous, and Workbench, along with a 'Personalize' link. The main content area is titled 'Denial Codes' and displays a table. The table has two columns: 'Description' and 'SetID SHARE'. The 'Description' column contains a row with 'Denial Reason Code' set to 'CONFIG'. The 'Description' field is labeled '*Description' and contains the text 'Invalid Configuration'. The 'Long Description' field contains the text 'The product contains an invalid configuration.'

Hold Denial Codes page

An enterprise may want to reject holds on orders placed by or for a partner. Define those hold denial codes on this page, and they will be available during order entry.

See *PeopleSoft Enterprise CRM 8.9 Application Fundamentals PeopleBook*, “Setting Up PeopleSoft Customer Relationship Management Security and User Preferences”.

Creating Dynamic Events

Access the Dynamic Events page.

Capture Setup Tables

Dynamic Events

Workbench

Save | Refresh | Clone | Search | Next | Previous | Workbench | Personalize

| Description | SetID |
|-----------------|-------|
| Core Setup Data | SHARE |

Dynamic Events Find | View All First 1 of 4 Last

*Description Order Handler

Dynamic Event Processing

Specify the Application Class that controls the dynamic component processing. Classes specified here must extend RO_CAPTURE:BusinessLogic:Abstract:DynamicEvent

Application Class ID OrderDynamicEvent Package Tree Viewer

Application Class Path RO_CAPTURE_TYPES:Core:BusinessL

Dynamic Events page

Dynamic events are application classes that are loaded during the component lifecycle. When you load the component, enter data, and save, the system loads these events and, based upon methods in these classes, carries out certain logic.

Note. You can use these classes to plug in new logic without configuring the existing application.

See Also

PeopleSoft Enterprise CRM 8.9 Automation and Configuration Tools PeopleBook, “Using Application Classes”

Defining Header Statuses

Access the Header Statuses page.

Capture Setup Tables

Header Statuses

Workbench

Save Refresh Clone Search Next Previous Workbench Personalize

Description Core Setup Data SetID SHARE

Header Statuses Customize Find First 1-10 of 10 Last

| | Status | *Description | Allow Manual Change To Status | | |
|----|--------|------------------|-------------------------------------|---|---|
| 1 | 1 | Canceled | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | + | - |
| 2 | 350 | Generating | <input type="checkbox"/> | + | - |
| 3 | 500 | New | <input type="checkbox"/> | + | - |
| 4 | 1000 | Submitted | <input type="checkbox"/> | + | - |
| 5 | 1500 | Partial Hold | <input type="checkbox"/> | + | - |
| 6 | 2000 | In Fulfillment | <input type="checkbox"/> | + | - |
| 7 | 3500 | Fulfillment Hold | <input type="checkbox"/> | + | - |
| 8 | 5000 | Expired | <input type="checkbox"/> | + | - |
| 9 | 6000 | Complete | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | + | - |
| 10 | 9000 | Hold | <input type="checkbox"/> | + | - |

Header Statuses page

| | |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| Status | Displays the status code identifier for the header status. |
| Description | Displays the description of the header status. This description is visible to CSRs and self-service users. |
| Allow Manual Change To Status | Select to enable the CSR to make a manual change to this status during order entry. |

Note. Since a quote has an expiration date, a batch job examines the quote expiration dates and assigns any expired quotes a new header status of *Expired*, or whatever you choose to call it here. This action also triggers an EIP to update any associated proposals in the PeopleSoft Proposal Management system to *Canceled*. The exception to this rule is, that if any other quote that is not expired has a reference to the same proposal ID, it will not be cancelled in PeopleSoft Proposal Management. If an *Expired* quote is revised, the line status for the engagement status will be reset to *Draft* and an EIP is automatically sent to PeopleSoft Proposal Management.

Creating Line Actions

Access the Line Actions page.

Capture Setup Tables

Line Actions

Workbench

Save | Refresh | Clone | Search | Next | Previous | Workbench | Personalize

Description Core Setup Data **SetID** SHARE

Line Actions Customize | Find | First 1-3 of 3 Last

| | Line Action | *Description | | |
|---|-------------|--------------|---|---|
| 1 | ADD | Add | + | - |
| 2 | CNCL | Cancel | + | - |
| 3 | RENEW | Renew | + | - |

Line Actions page

Primarily, use line actions to help manage service management transactions.

Line Action Displays the system code identifier for the line action.

Description Displays the description for the line action. This description is visible to the CSR.

Creating Line Status Types

Access the Line Status Types page.

Capture Setup Tables

Line Status Types

Workbench

Save | Refresh | Clone | Search | Next | Previous | Workbench | Personalize

Description Core Setup Data **SetID** SHARE

Line Statuses Customize | Find | First 1-2 of 2 Last

| | Status Type | *Description | | |
|---|-------------|--------------------|---|---|
| 1 | 10 | Engagement Service | + | - |
| 2 | 99999 | Default | + | - |

Line Status Types page

Line Statuses

The values displayed in the dropdown for the quote lines will depend on the line status. This page defines those status types. The *Engagement Service* line status type is used for engagement services products, whereas the *Default* line status type is used for any product that is not flagged as an engagement service product.

Creating Line Statuses

Access the Line Statuses page.

Capture Setup Tables

Line Statuses

Workbench

Save

Refresh

Clone

Search

Next

Previous

Workbench

Personalize

Description

Core Setup Data

SetID

SHARE

Line Statuses

CustomizeFind

First1-18 of 18Last

| Status | *Description | | |
|--------|-------------------------------|---|---|
| 1 | 1 Canceled | + | - |
| 2 | 1000 Open | + | - |
| 3 | 1030 Priced | + | - |
| 4 | 1050 Sold | + | - |
| 5 | 1100 Partially Open | + | - |
| 6 | 2000 Backordered | + | - |
| 7 | 2100 Partially Backordered | + | - |
| 8 | 3500 Fulfillment Hold | + | - |
| 9 | 3600 Partial Fulfillment Hold | + | - |
| 10 | 4000 In Fulfillment | + | - |
| 11 | 4100 Partially In Fulfillment | + | - |
| 12 | 5000 Picked | + | - |
| 13 | 5100 Partially Picked | + | - |
| 14 | 6000 Shipped | + | - |
| 15 | 6010 Complete | + | - |
| 16 | 6100 Partially Shipped | + | - |
| 17 | 9000 On Hold | + | - |
| 18 | 9100 Partially On Hold | + | - |

Line Statuses page

Line Statuses

- Status

Displays the unique numeric code identifier for the line status.
- Description

Displays the description for the line status. This description is visible to the CSR.

Note. There are six new line statuses specifically designed for engagement services. These line statuses appear on the Entry Form page, and they map to corresponding statuses in PeopleSoft Proposal Management. You can edit the names of these statuses on this page.

Defining Line Statuses Drop Downs

Access the Line Statuses DropDown page.

Capture Setup Tables

Line Statuses DropDown

Workbench

Save Refresh Clone Search Next Previous Workbench Personalize

Description Core Setup Data **SetID** SHARE

Line Statuses Customize Find First 1-10 of 10 Last

| | *Status Type | *From Status | To Status | | |
|----|--------------------|--------------|-----------|---|---|
| 1 | Engagement Service | --- Any --- | Canceled | + | - |
| 2 | Engagement Service | Canceled | Draft | + | - |
| 3 | Engagement Service | Canceled | Lost | + | - |
| 4 | Engagement Service | Requested | Lost | + | - |
| 5 | Engagement Service | Priced | Negotiate | + | - |
| 6 | Engagement Service | Priced | Lost | + | - |
| 7 | Engagement Service | Negotiate | Lost | + | - |
| 8 | Engagement Service | Lost | Draft | + | - |
| 9 | Default | --- Any --- | Canceled | + | - |
| 10 | Default | Open | Complete | + | - |

Line Statuses DropDowns page

What you define as your available status types on the Line Statuses page determines what you see on this page. Since we deliver *Engagement Service* and *Default*, you can specify alternative status dropdowns for each of these two types.

PeopleSoft Order Capture uses data defined on this page to create the line status drop downs on orders and uses the current line status to determine which statuses should be available in the drop downs.

Defining MCF Types

Access the MCF Types page.

Capture Setup Tables

MCF Types

Workbench

Save | Refresh | Clone | Search | Next | Previous | Workbench | Personalize

Description Core Setup Data **SetID** SHARE

MCF Types Customize | Find | First 1-6 of 6 Last

| MCF Type | *Description | | |
|----------|----------------------------------|---|---|
| 1 CFNA | Confirmation Agreement | + | - |
| 2 CNCL | Cancelled | + | - |
| 3 CNF1 | Confirmation Single Shipment | + | - |
| 4 CNFN | Confirmation Multiple Shipments | + | - |
| 5 CNFS | Service Management Confirm Order | + | - |
| 6 MANT | Maintenance | + | - |

MCF Types page

MCF Type

Displays a unique identifier for the MCF type of correspondence.

Defining Note Origins

Access the Note Origins page.

Capture Setup Tables

Note Origins

Workbench

Save | Refresh | Clone | Search | Next | Previous | Workbench | Personalize

Description Core Setup Data **SetID** SHARE

Note Origins Customize | Find | First 1-5 of 5 Last

| Note Origin | *Description | | |
|-------------|---------------------|---|---|
| 1 CI | Component Interface | + | - |
| 2 INT | Internal | + | - |
| 3 LEAD | Lead | + | - |
| 4 PPRC | Pricing Engine | + | - |
| 5 WEB | Web | + | - |

Note Origins page

Note origins (descriptions) appear on the Notes tab of the order entry form. This note origin (description) is display-only and indicates the source of the note, such as *Internal* or *Web*.

Note Origin

Displays the system code identifier for the note origin.

Description

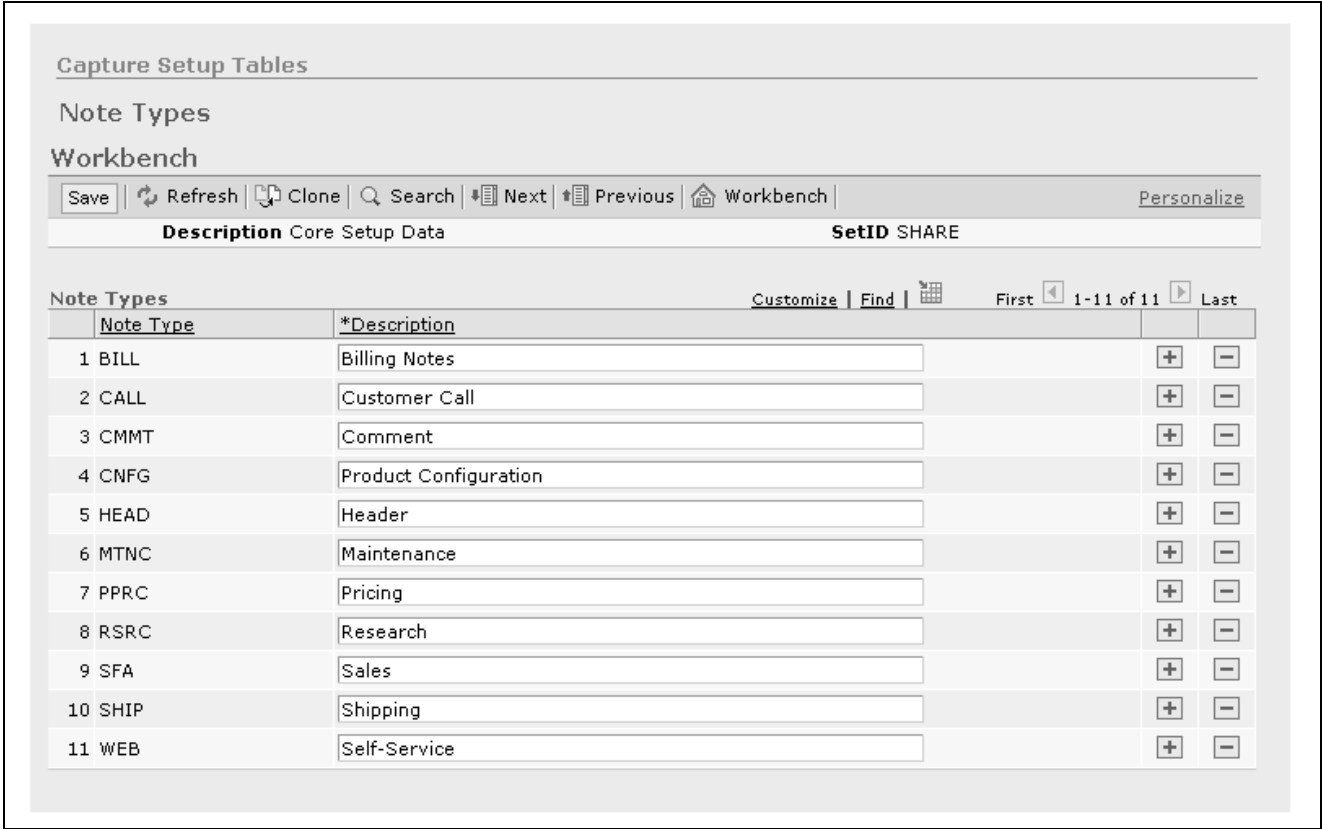
Displays the description for the note origin. This description is visible to the CSR.

See Also

PeopleSoft Enterprise CRM 8.9 Application Fundamentals PeopleBook, “Working with Notes and Attachments”
Chapter 8, “Managing Orders and Quotes,” Adding and Viewing Notes and Attachments, page 146

Defining Note Types

Access the Note Types page.



Note Types page

Note types appear in the Note Types drop-down list box on the Notes tab of the order entry form.

- Note Type
- Displays the system code identifier for the note type.
- Description
- Displays the description for the note type. This description is visible to the CSR.

See Also

PeopleSoft Enterprise CRM 8.9 Application Fundamentals PeopleBook, “Working with Notes and Attachments”
Chapter 8, “Managing Orders and Quotes,” Adding and Viewing Notes and Attachments, page 146

Creating Note Visibility

Access the Note Visibility page.

Capture Setup Tables

Note Visibility

Workbench

Save | Refresh | Clone | Search | Next | Previous | Workbench | Personalize

Description Core Setup Data **SetID** SHARE

Note & Attachment Visibility Customize | Find | First 1-3 of 3 Last

| Visibility | *Description | | |
|------------|---------------|---|---|
| 1 ALL | Everywhere | + | - |
| 2 INT | Internal Only | + | - |
| 3 OUT | External Only | + | - |

Note Visibility page

Note visibility appears in the Visibility field of the Notes tab of the order entry form. It controls who may see the note, and it applies equally to notes and attachments. A note can be visible internally to CSRs or externally to PeopleSoft Order Capture Self Service users. For example, if the CSR sets the visibility of a note to *Internal Only*, the self-service user cannot see the note. For attachments, a separate drop-down list box appears when an attachment is added to the order. This field contains the same visibility descriptions.

Visibility Displays the system code identifier for note and attachment visibility.

Description Displays the description for note and attachment visibility. This description is visible to the CSR.

See Also

PeopleSoft Enterprise CRM 8.9 Application Fundamentals PeopleBook, “Working with Notes and Attachments”

Chapter 8, “Managing Orders and Quotes,” Adding and Viewing Notes and Attachments, page 146

Defining Priorities

Access the Priorities page.

Capture Setup Tables

Priorities

Workbench

Save Refresh Clone Search Next Previous Workbench Personalize

Description Core Setup Data **SetID** SHARE

Priorities Customize Find First 1-4 of 4 Last

| 1 | 2 | *Description | | |
|---|---|--------------|---|---|
| 1 | 1 | Urgent | + | - |
| 2 | 2 | High | + | - |
| 3 | 3 | Medium | + | - |
| 4 | 4 | Low | + | - |

Priorities page

Priority descriptions appear in the header details of the entry form for PeopleSoft Order Capture. They contain no processing logic; they are for informational purposes only.

Third-party fulfillment systems can use priorities to determine processing order.

Capture Priority Displays the system code identifier for the capture priority.

Description Displays the description of the capture priority. This description is visible to the CSR.

Defining Source Codes

Access the Source Codes page.

Capture Setup Tables

Source Codes

Workbench

Save Refresh Clone Search Next Previous Workbench Personalize

Description Core Setup Data **SetID** SHARE

Source Codes Customize Find First 1-5 of 5 Last

| 1 | Source Code | *Description | External Source | Tracking URL Internal | Tracking URL Self-Service | | |
|---|-------------|--------------|-------------------------------------|------------------------|---------------------------|---|---|
| 1 | CTI | CTI | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="text"/> 🔍 | <input type="text"/> 🔍 | + | - |
| 2 | FAX | Fax | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="text"/> 🔍 | <input type="text"/> 🔍 | + | - |
| 3 | PHONE | Phone | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="text"/> 🔍 | <input type="text"/> 🔍 | + | - |
| 4 | SCM | Supply Chain | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | RO_EXT_TRACK 🔍 | RO_EXT_TRACK 🔍 | + | - |
| 5 | WEB | Self-Service | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="text"/> 🔍 | <input type="text"/> 🔍 | + | - |

Source Codes page

Source codes indicate the origin of an order or quote, and their descriptions appear in a drop-down list box in the header details of the entry form.

| | |
|--|---|
| External Source | Select if the order originated from an external system source. For example, you may have another system that generates orders. This option enables you to migrate these orders into PeopleSoft Order Capture so that you can view all of the orders for a particular customer through a single application. |
| Tracking URL Internal (tracking uniform resource locator internal) | Enter a uniform resource locator (URL) for PeopleSoft Order Capture to view a summary of the externally created orders. When CSRs search for orders or quotes and click one of these externally sourced orders, they are transferred to this URL to view the orders. |
| Tracking URL Self-Service (tracking uniform resource locator self-service) | Enter a URL for PeopleSoft Order Capture Self Service to view a summary of the externally created orders. When users search for orders or quotes in PeopleSoft Order Capture Self Service, they are transferred to this URL to view the orders. |

Defining Frequency Mappings

Access the Frequency Mappings page.

Capture Setup Tables

Frequency Mappings

Workbench

Save | Refresh | Clone | Search | Next | Previous | Workbench | Personalize

DescriptionCore Setup DataSetIDSHARE

Price Frequency MappingsCustomize | Find | First1-3 of 3Last

| Frequency | *Schedule ID | Description | | |
|------------|--------------|-------------------------|---|---|
| 1 Weekly | WEEKLY | Friday of each week | + | - |
| 2 Monthly | MONTHLY | 15th of each month | + | - |
| 3 Annually | ANNUAL | Annual Year-End Closing | + | - |

Frequency Mappings page

Price Frequency Mappings

| | |
|--------------------|--|
| Frequency | Select the relevant PeopleSoft CRM pricing frequency for the schedule that you defined in PeopleSoft Contracts. |
| Schedule ID | Enter the Schedule ID for purposes of the integration with PeopleSoft Contracts. Schedule ID determines how many billing transactions will be created. PeopleSoft Contracts only supports weekly, monthly, or annual schedule types. |

Note. Schedule ID is synchronized from PeopleSoft Financials Management to CRM. It determines the number of billing transactions that are created in PeopleSoft Billing. For example, if a service was \$10 per month and was valid for one year, we would want twelve \$10 charges to be applied to that customer. This does not mean that the customer is billed twelve times but only that there will be twelve bill lines for that customer. If you bill monthly, then each bill will have one line. If you bill yearly, then each bill will have twelve lines.

See Also

PeopleSoft Transaction Billing Processor 8.8 PeopleBook.

PeopleSoft Financials, Enterprise Service Automation and Supply Chain Management Application Fundamentals 8.8 PeopleBook, "Defining Financials and Supply Chain Management Common Definitions," Defining Common Journal Definitions.

PeopleSoft Enterprise CRM 8.9 Services Foundation PeopleBook, "Transaction Billing Processor Integration"

Defining Order and Quote Processing

The Capture Type Workbench enables you to configure specific processing for specific capture types.

Note. In this workbench, you apply data from the Setup Workbench to a specific capture type.

This section discusses how to:

- Create type definitions.
- Define hold processing.
- Define business project conditions.
- Define audit events.
- Define maintenance setup.
- Define dynamic events.
- Define MCF types.
- Define process types.

Pages Used to Define Order and Quote Processing

| Page Name | Object Name | Navigation | Usage |
|-----------------------------|-----------------|---|---|
| Type Definition | RO_TYPE | Set Up CRM, Product Related, Order Capture, Capture Type Workbench, Type Definition | Create type definitions for the Order, Quote, and Order Copy capture types. |
| Hold Processing | RO_TYPE_HOLD | Click the Hold Processing link on the Type Definition page. | Define hold processing for the capture type. |
| Business Project Conditions | RO_TYPE_BPEVENT | Click the Business Project Conditions link on the Type Definition page. | Define business project conditions that fire for the capture type. |
| AuditConditions | RO_TYPE_ADEVENT | Click the Audit Conditions link on the Type Definition page. | Define audit events for the capture type. |
| Maintenance Conditions | RO_TYPE_DEEVENT | Click the Maintenance Conditions link on the Type Definition page. | Define maintenance conditions by defining the data element events for the capture type. Data elements and their associated classes drive the maintenance and audit processing for the capture type. |
| Dynamic Events | RO_TYPE_DYEVENT | Click the Dynamic Events link on the Type Definition page. | Define dynamic events for this capture type. Dynamic events allow for dynamic, pluggable processing for a capture type, using dynamic event classes. |
| MCF Types | RO_TYPE_MCFTYPE | Click the MCF Types link on the Type Definition page. | Define MCF types that this capture type uses. |
| Process Types | RO_TYPE_PROCTYP | Click the Process Types link on the Type Definition page. | Define process types for a capture type. |

Creating Type Definitions

To create type definitions, use the Type Definition (RO_TYPE_GBL) component.

Access the Type Definition page.

Type Definition

Workbench

Save | Refresh | Clone | Search | Next | Previous | Workbench | Personalize

Capture Type SO

SetID SHARE

Description Order

This workbench is used to configure specific processing for a particular Capture type. Click the details link to add or update specific setup data.

Workbench Details

*Description Order

*Fire From Status Submitted

*Real-time Status Rule Upon Request Only

*To Status Complete

*Application Class Set Order Extensions

☒ Use Auto Numbering

*Display Template Core Order Template

Workbench Steps

| Details | Progress |
|--------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1: Type Definition | 8 of 8 required fields completed. |
| 2: Hold Processing | 39 Hold Processing |
| 3: Business Project Conditions | 5 Business Project Conditions |
| 4: Audit Conditions | 4 Audit Conditions |
| 5: Maintenance Conditions | 12 Maintenance Conditions |
| 6: Dynamic Events | 3 Dynamic Events |
| 7: MCF Types | 4 MCF Types |
| 8: Process Types | 1 Process Types |

Modified

02/10/2004 8:33PM PST

SAMPLE

Type Definition page

Type Definition is the main workbench page for creating type definitions for the Order, Quote, and Order Copy capture types.

Workbench Details

Description

Displays the description of the capture type. This appears during capture entry.

Real-Time Status Rule

Select when to invoke the real-time status enterprise integration point (EIP). Values are:

Upon Request Only: Invokes the EIP when the CSR clicks Refresh on the toolbar.

Prior to Capture Status Only: Invokes the EIP when the user searches and selects a capture.

Capture Status and On Request: Invokes the EIP when the user clicks Refresh and when the user searches and selects a capture.

Do Not Fire.

Fire From Status

Select the status at which the processing occurs, such as *Open* or *In Process*.

Statuses are identified by numeric status codes in the system. The selection here should represent the lowest numeric status code, which is the point at which the real-time status EIP fires.

| | |
|------------------------------|--|
| Application Class Set | Select application class set extensions that the system created during the application class registry setup step. <i>Order Extensions</i> is the default class set for orders; <i>Quote Extensions</i> is the default class set for quotes. |
| To Status | Select the status at which the processing occurs, such as <i>Open</i> or <i>In Process</i> . Statuses are identified by numeric status codes in the system. The selection here should represent the highest numeric status code, which is the point at which the real-time status EIP fires. |
| Use Auto Numbering | Select to enable autonumbering schemas, which the system chooses based on capture type and setID. If the system does not use these schemas, then the CAPTURE_ID is generated using the PeopleTools UIDGen() built-in function. See <i>PeopleSoft Enterprise CRM 8.9 Application Fundamentals PeopleBook</i> , “Setting Up General Options,” Setting Up Automatic Numbering. |
| Display Template | Control the user interface of the runtime component (RO_CAPTURE) by selecting a display template. Before you can make a selection here, you must create a display template or modify an existing template. You can define a new display template for PeopleSoft Order Capture by navigating to Set Up CRM, Common Definitions, Component Configuration, Display Template Definition. You can modify an existing template by navigating to Set Up CRM, Common Definitions, Component Configuration, Display Template Details. |

Note. Display templates allow for extensive configurability. For example, you can choose to divide the order entry form into sections and you can control the visibility of these sections (as well as the fields within the sections) from the display template. We deliver two display templates for PeopleSoft Order Capture. These are CORE_ORDER (Order Template) and CORE_QUOTE (Display template for Quote). Since several industry-specific applications rely upon PeopleSoft Order Capture, other display templates are also made available and those templates contain fields most relevant to that particular sector.

See *PeopleSoft Enterprise CRM 8.9 Application Fundamentals PeopleBook*, “Setting Up SmartViews,” Use of Templates.

See *PeopleSoft Enterprise CRM 8.9 Application Fundamentals PeopleBook*, “Setting Up SmartViews,” Defining SmartView Templates.

Workbench Steps

| | |
|-----------------|---|
| Details | Click a link in this column to view, create, or modify specific configurations for business processing logic. |
| Progress | Displays the number of steps completed from those that are available. |

Defining Hold Processing

Access the Hold Processing page.

Type Definition

Hold Processing

Workbench

Save Refresh Clone Search Next Previous Workbench Personalize

Capture Type SO

SetID SHARE

Description Order

Insert the holds that will process for this capture type.

Hold Codes

Customize Find

First 1-40 of 40 Last

| Enabled | Hold Code | Description | Description |
|-------------------------------------|-----------|---|---|
| <input type="checkbox"/> | ADRBIL | Bill to address is inactive | Hold triggered when the bill to address is inactive. |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | ADRSHP | Ship to address is inactive | Hold is triggered when the ship to address is inactive. |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | ADRSIT | Site address is inactive | Hold triggered when the site address is inactive. |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | AGRE2 | Duplicate Agreement Product | Hold is triggered when an agreement product is entered on the order more than once. |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | AGREE | AgreementProductValidation | Hold is triggered when the agreement product fails validation based on the agreement template. |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | ANON | Anonymous Customer Hold | Hold is triggered if the customer specified is setup as an anonymous Business Object. Use this hold when the fulfillment system does not support anonymous Customers. |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | CFGPRD | Order contains a configured product. | Hold triggered when the order contains at least one configured product |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | CONFIG | Configuration Hold | Hold is triggered if a line has a configured product and it is not configured when capture is submitted. |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | CORPCR | Exceed Corporate Credit Limit | Hold is triggered if the customer has exceeded the credit limit range as specified on the Customer & BU. |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | CRCD | Credit Card Hold | Hold is triggered if the customer is paying by credit card, and the authorization fails. |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | CSTCAT | Product not found in customer's catalog | Hold is triggered if the product is found in the partner's catalog but not in the sold to customer's catalog. |

Hold Processing page (1 of 3)

| | | | |
|-------------------------------------|--------|----------------------------------|--|
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | CURC | Currency Conversion Not Possible | Hold is triggered if there is no currency conversion available for the pricing engine. |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | DATECK | Invalid Start / End Dates | Hold is triggered when the start date or end date is missing or invalid for service products. |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | DISCNT | Discount percent over limit. | Hold is triggered if the total discount on a product is more than what the customer can apply. |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | FREIGT | Freight Calculation Hold | Hold is triggered when the third party freight calculation fails. |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | MAXQTY | Exceeds Maximum Order Qty | Hold is triggered if the quantity on the line exceeds the maximum order quantity. |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | MINMGN | Minimum margin reached | Hold is triggered when the margin for a product is less the the minimum margin allowed. |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | MINQTY | Under Minimum Quantity | Hold is triggered if the quantity on the line falls below the minimum order quantity. |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | MINSPL | Below Minimum Selling Price | Hold is triggered if the quantity on the line falls below the minimum selling price. |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | NOBILC | No Bill To Contact | Hold is triggered if the bill to contact is missing. |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | NOBILL | No Bill To Customer | Hold is triggered if the bill to customer is missing. |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | NOCC | Credit Card Required Hold | Hold is triggered if Payment Method is Credit Card on File but no credit card is selected. |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | NOCOMP | No Product Package Components | Hold is triggered if the line has a product that is a package, and no package components have been chosen. |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | NOLN | No Capture Lines | Validates that the capture has lines. |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | NOSHIP | No Ship To Customer | Hold is triggered if the ship to customer is missing. |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | NOSHPC | No Ship To Contact | Hold is triggered if the ship to contact is missing. |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | NOSITC | No Site Contact Specified | Hold is triggered if the site contact is missing. |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | NOSITE | No Site Specified | Hold is triggered if the site is missing. |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | NOSLDC | No Sold To Contact | Hold is triggered if the sold to contact is missing. |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | NOSOLD | No Sold To Customer | Hold is triggered if the sold to customer is missing. |

Hold Processing page (2 of 3)

| | | | |
|-------------------------------------|--------|---|---|
| <input type="checkbox"/> | NRACCT | No Recipient Accounts selected for Bulk Order | Hold triggered when no Recipient Accounts selected for Bulk Order |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | NRECI | No recipients selected on Bulk Order | Hold triggered when no recipients selected on Bulk Order |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | PCATLG | Product Catalog Violation | Hold is triggered if the product on the line is not in the customer's catalog. |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | PINCR | Product Increment Violation | Hold is triggered if the line quantity is not a multiple of the increment defined on the product definition. |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | PPRE | Product Prerequisite Violation | Hold is triggered if the product on the line has prerequisites that are not installed, or not on the current capture. |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | PRLS | Price List Not Found | Hold is triggered if there is no price list found by the pricing engine. |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | PSITC | Line Site Contact Required | Hold is triggered if a product requires a site, and a Site Contact is not one specified. |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | PSITE | Line Site Required | Hold is triggered if a product requires a site, and there is not one specified. |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | PTNCAT | Product not found in partner's catalog | Hold is triggered if the product is in the sold to customer's catalog but not in the partner's catalog. |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | PTNCNT | Partner contact is missing | Hold is triggered when the partner field is populated on the order but there is no partner contact specified. |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | SRCHRG | Price Surcharge Limit Reached | Hold is triggered when the surcharge percent is more than what the user is allowed to charge. |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | TOTPRC | Total price limit reached | Hold is triggered when the total order price is higher than the limit allowed for the current user. |

Hold Processing page (3 of 3)

After you define holds in the Setup Workbench, you must enable or disable them for every capture type. Hold conditions appear on the Holds tab of the entry form after submission.

Enabled

Select to make the corresponding hold code active or inactive for the current capture type.

Defining Business Project Conditions

Access the Business Project Conditions page.

Type Definition

Business Project Conditions

Workbench

Save

Refresh

Clone

Search

Next

Previous

Workbench

Personalize

Capture Type SO

SetID SHARE

Description Order

Insert the business project events that will fire for this capture type.

Business Project Events

CustomizeFind

First1-5 of 5Last

| *Sequence | Enabled | Event Name | Edit | *Business Project | Allow Multiple Instances | | |
|-----------|-------------------------------------|----------------|------|------------------------------|-------------------------------------|---|---|
| 10 | <input type="checkbox"/> | BulkOrderGenBP | Edit | Bulk Order Generation | <input type="checkbox"/> | + | - |
| 10 | <input type="checkbox"/> | BulkOrderSubBP | Edit | Submit Bulk Order Children | <input type="checkbox"/> | + | - |
| 10 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | CoreMaintBP | Edit | Order Capture Maintenance BP | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | + | - |
| 10 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | CoreOrderBP | Edit | (Invalid Value) | <input type="checkbox"/> | + | - |
| 10 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | ESAOrderBP | Edit | ESA Integration BP | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | + | - |

Business Project Conditionss page

When you submit an order or quote, business projects fire. You can view the type of business project condition that is being used on the Related actions tab of the order entry form . Define business project conditions for each capture type here, and include events for order submission as well as order maintenance activity. You can view or edit the PeopleSoft Proposal Management business project, *Engagement Service BP*

Business Project Conditions

Sequence

Enter the order in which the Order Capture business project condition fires when more than one event fires for a single capture.

Enabled

Select to fire the corresponding event.

Event Name

Displays the descriptive event name for the business project from the Component Event Model setup.

Business Project

Select the order capture business project.
PeopleSoft Order Capture delivers three business projects representing the order, the quote, and order change/maintenance.

Allow Multiple Instances

Select to enable multiple instances of this business project to start and run against the same capture.

See Also

PeopleSoft Enterprise CRM 8.9 Automation and Configuration Tools PeopleBook, “Automation Tools”

Chapter 5, “Working with PeopleSoft Order Capture Business Projects,” page 73

Defining Audit Conditions

Access the Audit Conditions page.

Type Definition

Audit Conditions

Workbench

Save | Refresh | Clone | Search | Next | Previous | Workbench | Personalize

Capture Type SO **SetID** SHARE

Description Order

Insert the data element events for this capture type. Data elements and their associated classes drive the maintenance and audit processing for this capture type.

Audit Events

| Audit Event Name | Edit | *Sequence | Enabled | *Audit Handler | *Message Set Number | *Message Number | *Message Text | | |
|------------------------|------|-----------|-------------------------------------|----------------|---------------------|-----------------|---------------|---|---|
| AuditCaptureMaintained | Edit | 10 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | AuditMessage | 18065 | 233 | Explain | + | - |
| AuditHoldPassed | Edit | 10 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | AuditMessage | 18065 | 232 | Explain | + | - |
| AuditManualHold | Edit | 10 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | AuditMessage | 18065 | 234 | Explain | + | - |
| AuditOpenStatusSubmit | Edit | 10 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | AuditMessage | 18065 | 231 | Explain | + | - |

Audit Conditions page

Audit events appear in Change History on the History tab of the order entry form. Audits help identify the specific events that took place relative to this specific order or quote.

Audit Events

| | |
|---------------------------|--|
| Audit Event Name | Displays the event reference from the Component Event Model setup. |
| Sequence | Enter the sequence in which the audit events fire. Events can fire simultaneously. |
| Enabled | Select to enable the corresponding audit event. |
| Audit Handler | Select the data element from the Setup Workbench extended application class that writes the audit message. A generic audit-message handler writes the message text to the Related History page when the audit event results in <i>True</i> . Create other audit handlers if you need configured logic. |
| Message Set Number | Enter the message set reference of the audit message that the event handler writes to the Related History page. |
| Message Number | Enter the message set number reference of the audit message that is to be written to the Related History page. |
| Message Text | Select whether the audit message’s “explain” text or “short” text is written to the Related History page. |

Defining Maintenance Conditions

Access the Maintenance Conditions page.

Type Definition

Maintenance Conditions

Workbench

Save

Refresh

Clone

Search

Next

Previous

Workbench

Personalize

Capture Type SO

SetID SHARE

Description Order

Insert the data element events for this capture type. Data elements and their associated classes drive the maintenance and audit processing for this capture type.

Maintenance Events

CustomizeFind

First1-12 of 12Last

| Maintenance Event | Edit | *Sequence | Enabled | *Maintenance Handler | *Event Type | | |
|---------------------------|------|-----------|-------------------------------------|----------------------|-------------|---|---|
| CoreMaintLineCustomer | Edit | 10 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | LineCustomer | Line | + | - |
| CoreMaintHdrCustomer | Edit | 10 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | HeaderCustomer | Header | + | - |
| CoreMaintHdrGeneral | Edit | 10 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | HeaderGeneral | Header | + | - |
| CoreMaintHdrPricing | Edit | 10 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | HeaderPricing | Header | + | - |
| CoreMaintLineStatusStatus | Edit | 10 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | LineStatusStatus | Line Stat | + | - |
| CoreMaintLineConfig | Edit | 10 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | LineConfig | Line | + | - |
| CoreMaintLineStatus | Edit | 10 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | LineStatus | Line | + | - |
| CoreMaintLineGeneral | Edit | 10 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | LineGeneral | Line | + | - |
| CoreMaintLinePrice | Edit | 10 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | LinePrice | Line | + | - |
| CoreMaintRequired | Edit | 10 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | MaintenanceRequired | Enabler | + | - |
| CoreMaintAvailable | Edit | 20 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | CaptureExclusive | Exclusive | + | - |
| CoreMaintHdrStatus | Edit | 30 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | HeaderStatus | Exclusive | + | - |

Maintenance Conditions page

You can enable or disable maintenance events that you created when you defined maintenance handlers in the Setup Workbench. In maintenance setup, you connect maintenance events, maintenance handlers, and event types.

- Maintenance Events

Displays a reference to the component event.
- Sequence

Enter the order in which the audit events fire when more than one audit fires.
- Enabled

Select to enable the corresponding audit event.
- Maintenance Handler

Select the data event handler (that you created in the Setup Workbench) that handles processing when the maintenance event evaluates to *True* or *False*. Based on the result of the event, logic is fired to make data elements of the capture editable or uneditable during a maintenance request.

Note. Certain handlers also determine if a capture needs maintenance processing and whether it is allowed based on the evaluation of associated events.

Event Type

Select an event type that determines when the event is run, as well as the level of data that is passed to the maintenance handler. Enabler events are fired when a capture is first loaded. These events determine if maintenance processing is required based on the event definition. If they are required, the handler is invoked, and the system sets the capture internal logic set to *MaintenanceRequired*. Then, the system evaluates exclusive events to determine if the capture can be maintained. The capture is determined as a consequence of the result of these events.

When you request capture maintenance by clicking the Maintain button in the PeopleSoft Order Capture toolbar, the system evaluates remaining events by header, line, and line status, based on the defined sequence. These events determine maintenance eligibility of data. After all events are run, the system presents the capture, with the appropriate editable and maintainable data, to the CSR.

Defining Dynamic Events

Access the Dynamic Events page.

Type Definition

Dynamic Events

Workbench

Save

Refresh

Clone

Search

Next

Previous

Workbench

Personalize

Capture Type

SO

SetID

SHARE

Description

Order

Insert the dynamic events for this capture type. Dynamic events allow for dynamic pluggable processing for this capture type, using the dynamic event classes.

Dynamic Events

Customize

Find

First

1-3 of 3

Last

| *Sequence | Enabled | Dynamic Class | | |
|-----------|-------------------------------------|-------------------|---|---|
| 10 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | Order Handler | + | - |
| 10 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | SFA Update | + | - |
| 10 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | Business Projects | + | - |

Dynamic Events page

- Sequence

Enter the sequence in which the dynamic events fire. Events can fire simultaneously.
- Enabled

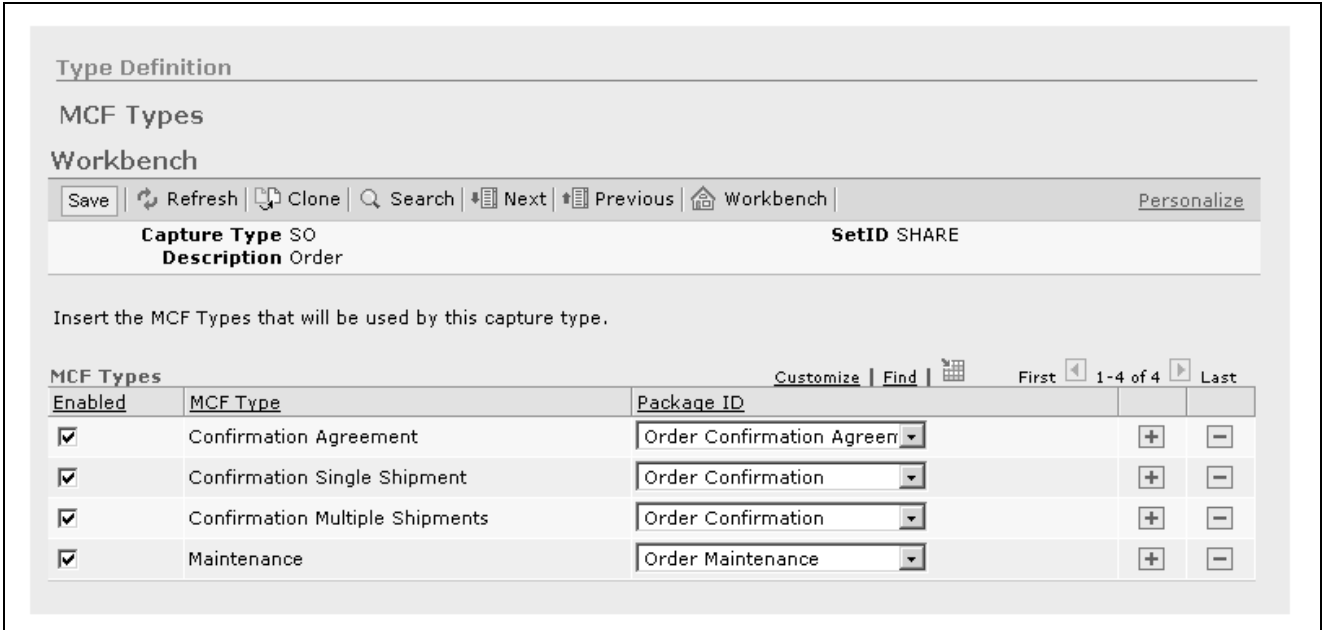
Clear this check box to disable loading for this application class.
- Dynamic Class

Displays a reference class, which you create in the Setup Workbench. These classes dynamically fire during capture processing.

Note. PeopleSoft CRM delivers events for component defaulting and component saving.

Defining MCF Types

Access the MCF Types page.



MCF Types page

To define new correspondences, connect the MCF type and package ID. Once you complete this setup step, you can generate correspondence for PeopleSoft Order Capture.

- Enabled**
- Select to enable the MCF type for the corresponding package ID.
- MCF Type**
- Displays the event that you defined as an MCF type in the Setup Workbench.
- Package ID**
- Select a package ID for PeopleSoft Order Capture. PeopleSoft Order Capture uses predefined templates that facilitate the creation of standardized communication between the user and the CSR. You make templates available to end users by grouping them in *template packages*. These packages can contain one or more *templates definitions*, which in turn reference *template files*. They also have package IDs, which are available for selection here.

Note. This field contains a list of package IDs that are defined in the correspondence package definition with a usage of *Order Capture* and a language of *English*.

See Also

PeopleSoft Enterprise CRM 8.9 Automation and Configuration Tools PeopleBook, “Correspondence Management”

Defining Process Types

Access the Process Types page.

Type Definition

Process Types

Workbench

Save | Refresh | Clone | Search | Next | Previous | Workbench | Personalize

Capture Type SO **SetID** SHARE

Description Order

Insert the process types for this capture type.

Process Types Customize | Find | First 1 of 1 Last

| Process | *Description | Default | Process Type |
|---------|--------------|-------------------------------------|--------------|
| NEW | New | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | |

Process Types page

Note. The PeopleSoft system does not use this capture type definition. However, certain industry-specific applications may create process types here.

Defining Integrations and Mappings

The Integration Workbench enables users to view and edit the integration settings that are required for PeopleSoft Order Capture.

This section discusses how to:

- Define integrations.
- Define header status mappings.
- Define line status mappings.
- Define source mappings.

Pages Used to Define Integrations and Mappings

| Page Name | Object Name | Navigation | Usage |
|-------------------------|-----------------|--|--|
| Integration Definitions | RO_DEFN_INTEGRT | Set Up CRM, Product Related, Order Capture, Integration Workbench, Integration Definitions | Define integrations (such as mapping to fulfillment systems). |
| Header Status Mappings | RO_DEFN_HDSTMAP | Click the Map Header Status link on the Integration Definitions page. | Define status mappings at the header level to (and from) external systems. |
| Line Status Mappings | RO_DEFN_LNSTMAP | Click the Line Status Mappings link on the Integration Definitions page. | Define status mappings at the line level to (and from) external systems. |
| Source Mappings | RO_DEFN_INTSRC | Click the Source Mappings link on the Integration Definitions page. | Define source mappings to message nodes. |

Defining Integrations

To define integrations, use the Integration Definitions (RO_DEFN_INTEGRT_GBL) component.

Access the Integration Definitions page.

Integration Definitions

Workbench

Save

Refresh

Clone

Search

Next

Previous

Workbench

Personalize

Description

SHARE Integration values

SetID

SHARE

This workbench allows users to view a summary of all the integration tables required for the Order Capture application. Click the details link to add or update specific setup data.

Workbench Details

*Description

SHARE Integration values

*Status Refresh Interval

60

*Fulfillment Node

PSFT_EP

Workbench Steps

| Details | Progress |
|---|-----------------------------------|
| 1: Integration Definitions | 4 of 4 required fields completed. |
| 2: Header Status Mappings | 5 Header Status Mappings |
| 3: Line Status Mappings | 14 Line Status Mappings |
| 4: Source Mappings | 1 Source Mappings |

Modified

03/22/2004 12:53PM PST

jruiggier

Integration Definitions page

Workbench Details

Description

Displays the description of the integration definition.

58

PeopleSoft Proprietary and Confidential

- Status Refresh Interval** Enter the number of seconds that must elapse before the system carries out an additional status call. For example, if the interval is set to 60 (seconds), then the system makes only one status call per minute, regardless of how many times the user clicks the Refresh toolbar button.
- Fulfillment Node** Enter the Integration Broker node name that the system uses to perform order fulfillment for this setID. Each of the defined header, line, and source mappings refer to this fulfillment node.
- Workbench Steps**
- Header Status Mappings** Click to access the Header Status Mappings page and define mappings between external-system statuses and internal PeopleSoft CRM statuses at the header level.
- Line Status Mappings** Click to access the Line Status Mappings page and define mappings between external-system statuses and internal PeopleSoft CRM statuses at the line level.
- Source Mappings** Click to access the Line Status Mappings page and define mappings between a message node and the corresponding source in PeopleSoft CRM.

Defining Header Status Mappings

Access the Header Status Mappings page.

The screenshot shows the 'Header Status Mappings' page in the PeopleSoft Workbench. The page has a toolbar with buttons for Save, Refresh, Clone, Search, Next, Previous, and Workbench. Below the toolbar is a table with 5 rows of mappings. The table has columns for Node Name, External Status, *CRM Status, Description, *Partial Status, and Description. The data is as follows:

| Node Name | External Status | *CRM Status | Description | *Partial Status | Description |
|-----------|-----------------|-------------|------------------|-----------------|------------------|
| 1 PSFT_EP | C | 6000 | Complete | 6000 | Complete |
| 2 PSFT_EP | H | 3500 | Fulfillment Hold | 3500 | Fulfillment Hold |
| 3 PSFT_EP | O | 2000 | In Fulfillment | 2000 | In Fulfillment |
| 4 PSFT_EP | P | 500 | New | 500 | New |
| 5 PSFT_EP | X | 1 | Canceled | 1 | Canceled |

Header Status Mappings page

For integrations, map PeopleSoft CRM header statuses and partial header statuses to their counterparts in the external fulfillment system.

- Node Name** Displays the message node that points to an external fulfillment system, which uses the statuses that appear in the External Status column.
- External Status** Displays the equivalent of the PeopleSoft CRM status for an external system. (Typically, external systems use status values that are different from the status

values that PeopleSoft CRM uses.) For example, a PeopleSoft CRM status of 6000 (complete) maps to a status of C in PeopleSoft Order Management.

CRM Status

Enter the PeopleSoft Order Capture status.

Description

Displays the text equivalent value of the numeric status value that you enter. Define the description text for partial statuses in the Setup Workbench Header Statuses step.

Partial Status

Enter a partial status code for the header status mapping. Partial status codes are identified in the status header for an order that has order lines in different stages of the fulfillment cycle.

Defining Line Status Mappings

Access the Line Status Mappings page.

Integration Definitions

Line Status Mappings

Workbench

Save Refresh Clone Search Next Previous Workbench Personalize

Description SHARE Integration values SetID SHARE

Line Status Mappings

Customize Find 1-14 of 14 Last

| | Node Name | External Status | *CRM Status | Description | *Partial Status | Description | | |
|----|-----------|-----------------|-------------|------------------|-----------------|--------------------------|---|---|
| 1 | PSFT_EP | B | 2000 | Backordered | 2100 | Partially Backordered | + | - |
| 2 | PSFT_EP | C | 6000 | Shipped | 6100 | Partially Shipped | + | - |
| 3 | PSFT_EP | CMTD | 1050 | Sold | 1050 | Sold | + | - |
| 4 | PSFT_EP | DENY | 1060 | Lost | 1060 | Lost | + | - |
| 5 | PSFT_EP | DRAF | 1010 | Draft | 1010 | Draft | + | - |
| 6 | PSFT_EP | H | 3500 | Fulfillment Hold | 3500 | Fulfillment Hold | + | - |
| 7 | PSFT_EP | K | 5000 | Picked | 5100 | Partially Picked | + | - |
| 8 | PSFT_EP | O | 4000 | In Fulfillment | 4100 | Partially In Fulfillment | + | - |
| 9 | PSFT_EP | P | 3000 | Pending | 3100 | Partially Pending | + | - |
| 10 | PSFT_EP | Q | 4500 | Requisitioned | 4600 | Partially Requisitioned | + | - |
| 11 | PSFT_EP | RDY | 1030 | Priced | 1030 | Priced | + | - |
| 12 | PSFT_EP | S | 6000 | Shipped | 6100 | Partially Shipped | + | - |
| 13 | PSFT_EP | U | 5500 | Purchased | 5600 | Partially Purchased | + | - |
| 14 | PSFT_EP | X | 1 | Canceled | 1 | Canceled | + | - |

Line Status Mappings page

For integrations, map PeopleSoft CRM line statuses and partial line statuses to their counterparts in the external fulfillment system.

Node Name

Displays the message node that is associated with the data.

External Status

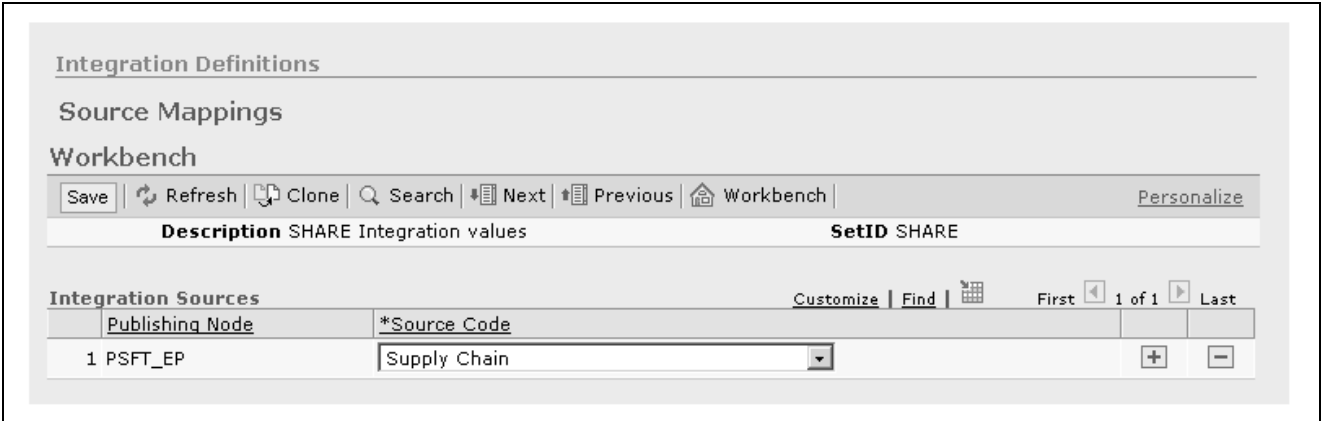
Displays the equivalent of the PeopleSoft Order Capture order line status for the external system. (Typically, external systems use status values

that are different from the status values that PeopleSoft CRM uses.) For example, a PeopleSoft CRM status of *4000* (in fulfillment) maps to a status of *O* (open) in PeopleSoft Order Management.

| | |
|-----------------------|--|
| CRM Status | Enter the PeopleSoft Order Capture line status code. |
| Description | Displays the text equivalent value of the numeric status value that you enter. The description of the partial status is visible to the CSR. |
| Partial Status | <p>Enter a partial status code for the line status mapping. Partial status codes identify the status of an order that has order lines in different stages of the fulfillment cycle.</p> <p>Example: If one schedule on the line is back-ordered (2000) and another schedule is shipped (6000), then the partial status is the partial version of the bigger number—in this case, 6000.</p> |

Defining Source Mappings

Access the Source Mappings page.



Source Mappings page

| | |
|------------------------|--|
| Publishing Node | Displays the message node to which PeopleSoft Order Capture sends data. The publishing node provides a mapping between the external node and the source code, which you define on the Source Codes page in the Setup Workbench. When you are using an external system to display an order, this mapping tells the system to which node to transfer the user and to display the order. |
| Source Code | Select the source code to which this data should map in PeopleSoft Order Capture. |

Setting Up Credit Card Integration

This section provides an overview of credit card integration and discusses how to set up credit card processing.

Understanding Credit Card Integration

PeopleSoft Order Capture uses a third-party payment service for acceptance of credit cards as a payment type. Order Capture retrieves credit card information from either the customer profile or when the CSR (or user) enters it during the order submission and checkout process. During this process, the user can save credit card information so that the next time this user signs in, credit card information appears in the appropriate order entry form.

Setting Up Credit Card Processing

To set up credit card processing for PeopleSoft Order Capture and Order Capture Self Service:

- Define the types of credit cards that you accept.
- Establish your merchant account with a third-party credit card provider, such as CyberSource.
- Set up the connection parameters for credit card processing calls.

See *PeopleSoft 8.8 Enterprise Components PeopleBook*.

Setting Up Freight Integration

This section provides an overview of freight integration setup and discusses how to:

- Set up the freight calculation integration.
- Test the freight calculation integration.
- Define carriers.
- Construct tracking numbers.

Understanding Freight Integration Setup

After you correctly install your third-party freight (carrier) application, to set up freight integration, perform these steps from within the PeopleSoft CRM application:

1. Follow the instructions that are provided in the PeopleSoft CRM Installation Guide to properly configure your system.
2. Set up the freight calculation integration.
3. Add a freight calculation *vendor* to the business unit definition.
4. Test the freight calculation integration.
5. Define your carriers.

Page Used to Set Up Freight Integration

| Page Name | Object Name | Navigation | Usage |
|-----------|-------------|--|--|
| Carriers | CARRIER | Set Up CRM, Product Related, Order Capture, Carrier Definition, Carriers | Define carriers for integration with PeopleSoft Order Capture. |

Setting Up the Freight Calculation Integration

PeopleSoft CRM integrates with ConnectShip to calculate freight charges. The freight calculation integration transfers the to address, carrier, and combined product weights data to ConnectShip.

To set up the freight calculation integration:

1. Activate the following application messages: *RATE_REQUEST*, *RATE_REQUEST_XFRM*, and *RATE_RESPONSE*.
2. Confirm that the *ALLPAGES* permission list has full permission to the *FREIGHT* channel.
Select PeopleTools, Security, Permissions & Roles, Permission Lists, and open the *ALLPAGES* permission list. Select the Message Monitor tab and look for an entry for *FREIGHT*. If not found, add a new entry for the *FREIGHT* channel, and grant it full access.
3. Activate the *FREIGHT* channel through the Message Monitor, on the Channels tab.
4. Activate the *OutSync* node transaction on the node, *PSFT_XOUTBND*, for the *RATE_REQUEST* transaction.
Select Peopletools, Integration Broker, Node Definitions.
5. Activate the *OutSync* node transaction on the node, *PSFT_XOUTBND*, for the *RATE_REQUEST_XFRM* transaction.

Note. This transaction uses an *HTTPTARGET* override connector and allows you to specify the URL to connect to Prologistics.

Replace the URL on the *RATE_REQUEST_XFRM* node transaction with your ConnectShip Prologistics server URL, which uses the following format: *http://<machine>/Prologistics/XML_Processor/Server/XMLProcDLL.asp*.

If you are not using port 80 on the ConnectShip Prologistics server, indicate the port in this URL: *<machine>:8080*

6. Select PeopleTools, Integration Broker, Relationships, and activate the *RATE_REQUEST* relationship.
On the Trans Modifier tab, select *Edit* and activate the *RATE_REQUEST* modifier.

Testing the Freight Calculation Integration

When you test the integration, use UPS Ground as the carrier.

Note. To carry out the freight calculation test, you must have configured UPS Ground for your business unit on your ConnectShip Prologistics server.

To test the freight calculation integration:

1. Open the PeopleSoft Order Capture Business Unit definition in PeopleSoft CRM for the business unit that you set up.
Select Set Up CRM, Business Unit Related, Order Capture Definition.
2. Click the Test Freight Calculation button.
If an amount other than zero appears, you are set up correctly. If zero appears, check the display message to determine what is not correctly set up.

See [Chapter 2, “Defining PeopleSoft Order Capture Business Units,” Creating PeopleSoft Order Capture Business Units, page 16](#).

Defining Carriers

To define carriers, use the Carriers (CARRIER_GBL) component.

Access the Carriers page.

Carriers page

Active

Select *Active* or *Inactive*. If you select *Inactive*, the carrier does not appear:

- As a valid carrier in the order capture business unit definition for PeopleSoft CRM Order Capture Self Service.
- On the order entry form for PeopleSoft CRM Order Capture.

Description

Enter a description that appears in several order capture locations where shipping information is defined.

Third Party Freight Calc. Key (third-party freight calculation key)

Enter the key that the third-party freight calculation system (for example, the ConnectShip Symbol) uses to identify this carrier.

Fulfillment Carrier Key1 and Fulfillment Carrier Key2

Enter keys that map the PeopleSoft CRM carriers to the equivalent carriers in the fulfillment system. For example, if you use PeopleSoft Order Management as your fulfillment system, key 1 would map to Carrier ID, while key 2 would map to Ship Via Method.

URL Identifier

Use this URL to construct a link to the carrier's shipment tracking page.

Message Set Number

Displays two message numbers.

Message Number

Enter the message numbers that the system uses to construct the package tracking link.

Constructing Tracking Numbers

An order may consist of multiple shipments and, consequently, of multiple tracking numbers. PeopleSoft Order Capture and Order Capture Self Service support the construction of a single tracking link, which displays all shipments at once.

To construct a tracking link:

1. Point the URL identifier to a URL definition.

This is the static (unchanging) portion of the carrier's tracking URL.

2. If there is more than one shipment to track, ensure that the first message catalog entry message number is appended to the URL.

Parameter %1 within the message is replaced by the package number (for example, 1 for the first package, 2 for the second package). The shipment's tracking number replaces Parameter %2. If only one shipment is being tracked, this message is not used in constructing the URL.

3. For the last package, append the second message catalog entry to the URL using the same parameter replacement rules as the first message number.

Note. You use the second message catalog entry only if a tracking link is constructed for one package. If the second message catalog entry is not present, then you use the first message catalog entry.

UPS Example

If two United Parcel Service (UPS) packages are tracked at once, this link would work:

http://wwwapps.ups.com/etracking/tracking.cgi?sort_by=status&track=Track&TypeOfInquiryNumber=T&InquiryNumber1=444&InquiryNumber2=555

Note. PeopleSoft CRM ships with the URL definition UPS_TRACK, which is defined as http://wwwapps.ups.com/etracking/tracking.cgi?sort_by=status&track=Track&TypeOfInquiryNumber=T. PeopleSoft CRM also ships with a single message catalog entry: 18065, 80. This contains &InquiryNumber%1=%2.

When you construct this link, the URL definition is initially appended with this message catalog entry. Replace %1 with the first shipment number (1) and %2 with the tracking number for the first shipment (444), which yields this string: http://wwwapps.ups.com/etracking/tracking.cgi?sort_by=status&track=Track&TypeOfInquiryNumber=T&InquiryNumber1=444. The next shipment is the final shipment, but because there is no defined second message catalog entry, the first entry is appended once more. This becomes the final link: http://wwwapps.ups.com/etracking/tracking.cgi?sort_by=status&track=Track&TypeOfInquiryNumber=T&InquiryNumber1=444&InquiryNumber2=555.

FedEx Example

This link tracks two Federal Express (FedEx) shipments (tracking numbers 444 and 555):

<http://www.fedex.com/cgi-bin/tracking?action=track&tracknumbers=444,555>.

The URL definition, FEDEX_TRACK, contains <http://www.fedex.com/cgi-bin/tracking?action=track&tracknumbers=>. The message catalog entry 18065, 81 is %2, (note the comma). The message catalog entry 18065,82 is simply %2.

Note. FedEx does not use the %1 parameter (which is the shipment number).

For these two packages, the URL definition is initially appended with the first message catalog entry and becomes `http://www.fedex.com/cgi-bin/tracking?action=track&tracknumbers=444`.

For the final package, the second message catalog entry is used and appended to the above string, resulting in `http://www.fedex.com/cgi-bin/tracking?action=track&tracknumbers=444,555`.

If only one package is tracked, the second message catalog entry is appended to the URL definition, yielding `http://www.fedex.com/cgi-bin/tracking?action=track&tracknumbers=555`.

Note. In the last example, the first message catalog entry was not used.

Defining Tax Installation Options

This section provides an overview of tax installation options setup and discusses how to define tax provider options.

Understanding Tax Installation Options Setup

PeopleSoft Order Capture works with third-party systems such as Taxware, Vertex, and WorldTax to calculate taxes on orders.

Once the preferred tax application is installed to work with PeopleSoft CRM applications, you must define tax settings for your business units and then define advanced tax installation options for either Taxware or Vertex. Taxware uses the STEP feature, while Vertex uses its Tax Decision Maker (TDM). If you use these, you must select the appropriate check boxes on the Tax Provider page.

Note. You can also take advantage of product groups.

Tax Settings for Business Units

Business units determine tax sets, which are entered when you define your business units on the Order Capture Definition page.

See [Chapter 2, “Defining PeopleSoft Order Capture Business Units,” Creating PeopleSoft Order Capture Business Units, page 16](#).

Tax Product Groups

You can set up product tax groups to take advantage of the Taxware Product Matrix or the Vertex Product Taxability files in Vertex TDM.

A *tax product group* is a product group with a product group type of Tax, which you define in PROD_GROUP_TBL.

Note. If you organize your data wisely, using tax product groups reduces taxing errors and product maintenance time.

Each order line has a single product ID. You can associate a tax product group with each product. PeopleSoft Order Capture sends the product ID and the tax product group through the interface, and Taxware or Vertex determines whether the product ID or product tax group takes precedence.

Note. If you use Taxware, you can simplify data entry by creating tax product groups that are equal to any of the Taxware product codes that apply to your company's business. Create or update your product IDs with the tax groups that apply.

See *PeopleSoft Enterprise CRM 8.9 Product and Item Management PeopleBook*, "Setting Up Products," Defining Products.

Page Used to Define Tax Installation Options

| Page Name | Object Name | Navigation | Usage |
|----------------------|---------------|--|--|
| Tax Provider Options | TAX_PROV_INFO | Set Up CRM, Product Related, Order Capture, Tax Provider Options, Tax Provider Options | Define tax provider (Taxware or Vertex) options. |

Defining Tax Provider Options

To define tax provider options, use the Tax Provider Options (TAX_PROV_INFO_GBL) component.

Access the Tax Provider Options page.

Tax Provider Options page

Taxware

Use STEP

Select, if you are using the Taxware STEP module, to indicate that additional fields must be sent through the interface.

Reason Code Matching

Select how you want to handle tax certificate entry reason lookup in STEP. Select *Exact Reason Code Match*, the more restrictive of the two options, to have Taxware find only tax certificates that were entered with the exact reason code that you set up on the order line. If you select *Use Default Record*, Taxware looks for an exact match. If it does not find one, it uses a default tax certificate for exemption.

Certificate Level

Select which taxing jurisdiction level tax certificates apply. If you select *Individual Certificate Levels*, STEP looks for certificates at all individual levels and exempts tax only for the levels at which a certificate is found. *State Level Only* prompts STEP to look for a certificate only at the state level.

Vertex**Use TDM**

Select to use the Vertex TDM application to set up exceptions to taxability rules in the states where they apply. In TDM, you can set up product classes, which are equivalent to tax product groups and product IDs. You can decide whether to use product IDs or product classes.

CHAPTER 4

Understanding Product, Pricing, and Catalog Setup

PeopleSoft Order Capture uses the following object elements: product data, a pricing engine, and a catalog.

This chapter discusses:

- Products, PeopleSoft Enterprise Pricer, and catalogs.
- Product setup.
- Pricing setup.
- Catalog setup.

See Also

PeopleSoft Enterprise CRM 8.9 Product and Item Management PeopleBook, “Setting Up Products”

PeopleSoft Enterprise Pricer 8.9 PeopleBook

PeopleSoft Enterprise CRM 8.9 Product and Item Management PeopleBook, “Creating Catalogs”

Products, PeopleSoft Enterprise Pricer, and Catalogs

This section previews the integration of products, pricing, and catalogs with PeopleSoft Order Capture.

Products

Product definitions provide the foundation for many features of PeopleSoft Customer Relationship Management (PeopleSoft CRM), including product ordering, catalogs, and catalog searches. Product records are also used by PeopleSoft Advisor to create the Advisor dialogs that are accessed from within PeopleSoft Order Capture and PeopleSoft Order Capture Self Service.

You can use many of the elements used to define products—such as product brand, product category, product group, and product attributes—to dynamically generate catalogs based on criteria that you specify. For example, you can create rules that select only certain brands for inclusion in a catalog or that include products based on their attributes.

Pricing

PeopleSoft Enterprise Pricer enables real-time, dynamic pricing on quotes and orders based on company pricing policies. PeopleSoft Order Capture users define rules that determine which discounts, surcharges, giveaways, and conditions apply. As products are added to a quote or an order, PeopleSoft Enterprise Pricer applies all of the pricing rules that match the defined conditions to determine a final price. Conditions might include number of products ordered, type of customer, or customer region. The same pricing engine also allows customer service representatives (CSRs) to manually adjust prices and view all price adjustments related to an order or a quote.

Catalogs

The PeopleSoft CRM Catalog contains a hierarchy of products that PeopleSoft Order Capture and PeopleSoft Order Capture Self Service can access. You can access catalogs from different locations within the collaborative selling suite of applications. Users can navigate directly to Catalog Search and enter search criteria in the search dialog box, or configure the PeopleSoft CRM portal homepage to display a catalog search pagelet. You can also navigate to the catalog by using the order form.

Note. To navigate to the catalog by using the order form, you must have the PeopleSoft CRM Portal Pack installed.

Using the order form, CSRs can search catalogs for product information. PeopleSoft Order Capture Self Service customers can also view catalog information.

In addition, you can restrict user access to a product by validating it against a catalog when the product is added to an order.

CSRs and customers can also access the product catalog by way of PeopleSoft Advisor dialogs, and CSRs and customers can launch PeopleSoft Advisor from the catalog to retrieve product recommendations based on dialog interactions.

Product Setup

To define products and packages in PeopleSoft CRM, you:

1. Create definitional elements to associate with product elements such as product brand, product category, and competency codes.
These are reusable attributes that you associate with product IDs in step 2 to create unique product and package definitions.
2. Create the product and associate definitional elements (as well as other product attributes and parameters) with the product IDs.
3. Assign product units of measure on the Product Attributes by UOM page.
4. Define package components on the Package Components page (for products defined as packages).
5. Establish product prices using the Product Price page (for individual products and packages with top-level pricing) or the Product Component Pricing page (for packages using component-level pricing).
6. Define product relationships on the Product Relationships page.
7. Associate standard or custom notes with products on the Notes page.

See Also

PeopleSoft Enterprise CRM 8.9 Product and Item Management PeopleBook, “Setting Up Products”

Pricing Setup

Documentation on how to set up and use PeopleSoft Enterprise Pricer appears in the *PeopleSoft Enterprise Pricer 8.9 PeopleBook*.

See *PeopleSoft Enterprise Pricer 8.9 PeopleBook*.

Catalog Setup

PeopleSoft CRM enables you to define the layout and content of online product catalogs for internal and external use. You define the look and feel of catalogs by creating display templates, and then define the contents that you want to organize and present according to your template definitions. You can designate products for inclusion in a catalog either by direct association (using product IDs) or by creating business rules to dynamically build product content based on the selection criteria that you define. Similarly, you can control user access to catalogs (as well as tailor catalogs to users) by directly associating user IDs with specific catalogs or by setting up business rules to establish permissions.

See Also

PeopleSoft Enterprise CRM 8.9 Product and Item Management PeopleBook, “Creating Catalogs”

CHAPTER 5

Working with PeopleSoft Order Capture Business Projects

This chapter provides an overview of PeopleSoft Order Capture business projects and discusses how to:

- Define PeopleSoft Order Capture business projects.
- View PeopleSoft Order Capture business projects.

See Also

PeopleSoft Enterprise CRM 8.9 Automation and Configuration Tools PeopleBook,
“Setting Up Business Projects”

PeopleSoft Enterprise CRM 8.9 Automation and Configuration Tools PeopleBook, “Using Business Projects”

Understanding PeopleSoft Order Capture Business Projects

PeopleSoft Customer Relationship Management (PeopleSoft CRM) delivers business projects that automatically manage certain predefined application processes. Using a business project to manage these tasks simplifies the management of conditional logic that often varies based on industry and customer-specific needs.

PeopleSoft Order Capture delivers three prebuilt business projects, each of which is a combination of phases and tasks designed to manage the order capture business process. PeopleSoft Order Capture business projects are advantageous because they automate the processing steps for orders and quotes. To enable the configuration of key order processing events, PeopleSoft Order Capture uses business projects as the agent to initiate and verify those events. Specifically, they trigger and confirm the status of key events such as email confirmation, creation of installed product records, publishing of data to a fulfillment system, and notification of shipment completion.

Note. PeopleSoft Order Capture business projects are registered as actions related to the order and can therefore be found on the Related actions page of the Order Capture component.

This table describes the three PeopleSoft Order Capture business projects that the PeopleSoft system delivers:

| Business Project | Object Name | Event Name | Internal Description | Triggering Event |
|-------------------|-----------------|-------------|----------------------|--|
| Order | CORE_ORDER_BP | CoreOrderBP | Order Capture BP | The order status changes to <i>Open</i> . The business project is instantiated when the STATUS_CODE field on the RO_HEADER record equals a code status of 1000. |
| Order Maintenance | CORE_ORD_CHG_BP | CoreMaintBP | Order Change BP | When an order is maintained and submitted, the system saves changes to the order to RO_HISTORY. When an RO_HISTORY record is created with Open status, this triggers the CoreMaintBP event. The business project is instantiated when the RO_HISTORY_STATUS field on the RO_HISTORY record changes to OPEN status. |
| Quote | CORE_QUOTE_BP | CoreQuoteBP | Quote BP | The quote status changes to <i>Open</i> . The business project is instantiated when the STATUS_CODE field on the RO_HEADER record equals a code status of at least 1000. |

Note. PeopleSoft Order Capture also supports several industry-specific business projects. Applications such as PeopleSoft Enterprise Phone Number Administration, PeopleSoft Enterprise Client Management, PeopleSoft Enterprise Policy and Claims Presentment, PeopleSoft Enterprise Banking Transactions, PeopleSoft Enterprise Bill Presentment and Account Management, and PeopleSoft CRM for High Technology include their own business projects that are tailored to the specific needs of their respective industries. Consult the documentation for those applications to better understand how their business projects plug in to the PeopleSoft Order Capture framework.

Defining PeopleSoft Order Capture Business Projects

This section supplements the general PeopleSoft CRM documentation, which explains how to set up business projects for all PeopleSoft CRM applications. Because PeopleSoft Order Capture delivers a centralized Capture Type Workbench, the method by which you set up your business projects is slightly different from other PeopleSoft CRM applications.

This section provides an overview of business project definition and discusses how to set up and view PeopleSoft Order Capture business projects.

See Also

PeopleSoft Enterprise CRM 8.9 Automation and Configuration Tools PeopleBook, “Setting Up Business Projects”

Understanding Business Project Definition

Order, quote, and maintenance business projects, like other business projects, are broken down into phases, tasks, and transition rules. *Tasks* are the basic unit of work in a business project. *Phases* represent groups of tasks. When you create your phases, tasks, and transition rules, you define the central element of the business projects. *Transition rules* establish the conditions by which the business project moves from one phase to the next.

Phases

Phases encapsulate one or more related tasks and constitute the main steps of the business project. Phases are always performed sequentially. For each phase in a business project, you define its possible target phases and the conditions under which each target is appropriate. These conditions are called *transition rules*.

PeopleSoft Order Capture business projects contain several phases. For example, there are eight main phases in the order business project (CORE_ORDER_BP), but there are only two phases in the quote business project (CORE_QUOTE_BP). These specific phases are identified and explained below.

Tasks

When you set up a phase, you define the sequence of tasks in the phase. Tasks are single actions that directly correspond to an Application Engine program or Data Mover script. A new task begins when all preceding tasks in a phase are complete.

Tasks within a single phase can be performed either in parallel or in sequence. To define tasks in parallel, you assign each task the same sequence number. Sequence numbers for several tasks in PeopleSoft Order Capture business projects possess the same sequence number and are therefore performed simultaneously.

Note. To view sequence numbers, access the Capture Type Workbench, Business Projects page.

See [Chapter 3, “Setting Up PeopleSoft Order Capture,” Defining Business Project Conditions, page 52.](#)

Transition Rules

Transition rules determine the transition from one phase to the next, based on the success or failure of tasks within that phase. The outcome of a task can be:

- *Cancelled.*
- *Complete - Success.*
- *Complete - Failed.*

See Also

PeopleSoft Enterprise CRM 8.9 Automation and Configuration Tools PeopleBook, “Setting Up Business Projects,” Defining Tasks

PeopleSoft Enterprise CRM 8.9 Automation and Configuration Tools PeopleBook, “Setting Up Business Projects,” Defining Phases

Setting Up and Viewing PeopleSoft Order Capture Business Projects

Business project setup for PeopleSoft Order Capture can be broken down into three main steps:

1. Access the Business Projects component: Set Up CRM, Common Definitions, Business Projects.

There, you define all of the elements of the business project, including the phases, tasks, and transition rules, as well as any time delays.

Note. PeopleSoft Order Capture delivers predefined business projects. In this step you need only verify that these predefined business projects work for your business model.

See *PeopleSoft Enterprise CRM 8.9 Automation and Configuration Tools PeopleBook*, “Setting Up Business Projects”.

2. Access the Event Definition component: Setup CRM, Common Definitions, Event Definition.

Here, you define the triggering action that first launches the business project. The PeopleSoft system has predefined the triggering action for each of the business projects that the PeopleSoft system delivers. If these triggering events need to change for your business, you can change them here.

Note. The PeopleSoft system delivers a check every 120 minutes that repeats for the Order and Order Maintenance business projects. These two business projects repeatedly check the fulfillment system every two hours to see if the maintenance that has been requested has been processed. You should adjust this workflow action value to best suit your business needs, as smaller time delays cause more frequent processing activity on Process Scheduler and thus increase the load on your system.

3. Access the Business Project Events page in Capture Type Workbench: Set Up CRM, Product Related, Order Capture, Capture Type Workbench, Business Project Events.

Here you can perform the following tasks:

- Add business project events that fire for the Order or Quote.
- Enable or disable delivered business projects.
- Alter the sequence of the business project events so that they fire sequentially or in parallel.
- Allow multiple instances of the business project.

This is recommended for Order Maintenance, but not for Order or Quote.

See Also

PeopleSoft Enterprise CRM 8.9 Automation and Configuration Tools PeopleBook, “Setting Up Business Projects”

Viewing PeopleSoft Order Capture Business Projects

This section discusses how to:

- View the PeopleSoft Order Capture business project tree.
- View the order business project.
- View the order maintenance business project.
- View the quote business project.

See Also

PeopleSoft Enterprise CRM 8.9 Automation and Configuration Tools PeopleBook, “Using Business Projects”

Page Used to View PeopleSoft Order Capture Business Projects

| Page Name | Object Name | Navigation | Usage |
|-------------------------|--------------|---|--|
| Business Project Status | RC_BP_STATUS | Orders and Quotes, Search Orders and Quotes, Related Actions Click the View Details button on the Related Objects page. | View the status of all three PeopleSoft Order Capture business projects. |

Viewing the PeopleSoft Order Capture Business Project Tree

Access the Business Project Status page.

Business Project Status

Refresh Personalize

Business Project CORE_ORDER_BP **Type** Main Business Project

Description Order Capture BP

Status Complete

Parent Object Information Capture ID-CRO0307086

Business Project

*Tree Type Task Tree

First | Previous | Next | Last | Left | Right

- ✓ Contract Request Phase
- ✓ Contract Request
- ✓ Installed Product Creation Ph.
- ✓ Create Installed Products
- ✓ Agreement Creation Phase
- ✓ Create agreement
- ✓ Publish Order
- ✓ Publish New Order
- ✓ Order Email Confirmation Phase
- ✓ Order Email Confirmation
- ✓ Shipment Completion
- ✓ Check Shipment Complete
- ✓ SO Creation
- ✓ Create Service Order

Phase Detail

Phase Contract Request Phase

Status Complete

Transition Rule All Complete All Success

Target Phase

Comments

Last Maintained By

Last Modified

Save and Update

Business Project

The PeopleSoft Order Capture business project tree provides a visual representation of the business project. The left side of the page displays all phases and their possible targets. Clicking a phase causes the right side of the page to display details such as the phase's task list and the transition rules for each of its targets. The first phase appears at the top of the tree, and each time there is a transition to a different phase, that new phase is added to the tree. Because business project definitions permit any phase to transition to any other phase, a single phase can be instantiated more than once and, as a result, can appear multiple times in the tree.

Note. Only phases that have been instantiated appear in the tree. The system does not display future phases because it cannot tell which ones will be instantiated.








Status

Enter the overall status of the PeopleSoft Order Capture business project. When you first invoke a business project, the status is *In Process*. You can manually change the status to *Cancel* any time before the business project is finished. When the project is finished, the system updates the status to *Complete*.

You cannot manually set the business project status to *Complete*. The only way to complete a business project is to transition out of the last activity (either manually or automatically).

Outcome

Appears only for sub-business projects whose outcomes are set manually. Once the sub-business project is complete, set the outcome to either *Success* or *Failed*.

| | |
|---|---|
| Description | <p>Displays the text from the field specified on the Parent Object page of the business project definition. If the information is not descriptive enough, return to the parent object to modify it.</p> <p>The description is the only information provided about the parent object from which this business project was invoked.</p> |
|  and  | <p>These icons appear at the top level of the tree hierarchy; they indicate phases that have been instantiated. They enable you to expand and collapse the tree.</p> |
|  | <p>Indicates the second level of the tree hierarchy.</p> |
|  | <p>Indicates that the task or phase is in progress.</p> |
|  | <p>Indicates that the task or phase is canceled.</p> |
|  | <p>Indicates that the task was successfully completed or that the phase is complete.</p> <hr/> <p>Note. Phases do not distinguish between successful and unsuccessful completion.</p> <hr/> |
|  | <p>Indicates that the task has failed.</p> <hr/> <p>Note. This does not necessarily mean that the task will end. For example, the Order Maintenance business project automatically checks shipment status every 120 minutes. If there has been no shipment or if the order has not been canceled, the task displays this icon, and the business project repeats the task. The task continues to kick off every two hours (placing this icon in the Tree Viewer each time) until successful. For each instance that there has been no shipment or order cancelation, you see this icon in the tree.</p> <hr/> |

Phase Detail

This region appears when you select a phase from the business project summary region.

| | |
|------------------------|--|
| Phase | Displays the name of the phase currently selected in the business project tree. |
| Status | <p>Displays the phase status. Values are: <i>In Process</i>, <i>Complete</i>, or <i>Canceled</i>. (If you cancel a business project, the phase that was in progress is also canceled.)</p> <p>Phase statuses don't distinguish between successful and unsuccessful completion.</p> |
| Transition Rule | Displays how the system transitioned to the selected phase, or indicates that transition was performed manually. If the phase is not complete, no text appears. |
| Target Phase | <p>To make a manual transition, select the next phase and save the page. You can do this only if the transition definition specifies a manual transition.</p> <p>Manually transitioning out of a phase changes the source phase's status to <i>Complete</i>, but it does not affect the status of any of the incomplete tasks in the source phase.</p> |

Updating the Tree

Save and Update Tree

Click to save changes to the page and to update the business project tree based on those changes. For example, click this button to complete a manual transition after you select a phase from the Target Phase drop-down list box.

Viewing the Order Business Project

Access the Business Project Status page.

Business Project Status

Refresh

Business Project CORE_ORDER_BP **Type** Main Business Project
Description Order Capture BP

Status Definition

Parent Object Information Capture ID-OC00644
Status In Process

Business Project *Tree Type Task Tree
 First | Previous | Next | Last | Left | Right

- ✓ Contract Request Phase
 - ✓ Contract Request
 - ✓ Installed Product Creation Ph.
 - ✓ Create Installed Products
 - ✓ Agreement Creation Phase
 - ✓ Create agreement
 - ✓ Publish Order
 - ✓ Publish New Order
 - ✓ Order Email Confirmation Phase
 - ✓ Order Email Confirmation
 - Shipment Completion
 - Check Shipment Complete

Phase Detail

Phase Contract Request Phase

Status Complete
Transition Rule All Complete All Success

Target Phase

Comments

Last Maintained By JPEPPER
Last Modified 06/04/2004 2:17PM

Save and Update

Business Project Status page

Order Business Project Phases

Contract Request

When the PeopleSoft Contracts integration is in effect, this phase examines the Contract Mapping table for the Customer and Business Unit on the order to determine if there is a Contract number. If there is, this phase is marked complete. If there is no Contract number for this customer and business unit, a Contract Request message is sent to the PeopleSoft Contracts system, and the phase will wait until CRM receives a response from PeopleSoft Contracts with the contract number. Once the response is received, this phase will be marked *Complete*.

If the PeopleSoft Contracts integration is not active, this phase will immediately be marked *Complete* and the next phase of the business project executes.

Note. The Workflow Rule RO Contract Request, which is the event performed by the CONTRACT_REQ task, runs the Application Engine program RO_CONTR_EIP.

Installed Product Creation

For order lines that require installed products, this phase creates the installed products with the status as indicated in the Product Definition component. The order may contain products that require an installed product, as indicated by the Installed Product page in the Product Definition component.

In addition, when creating installed products for serialized items, the system creates one installed product for each quantity ordered. For nonserialized items, the system creates a single installed product for the entire quantity ordered on the order line.

Installed products contain values from the order, such as customer information, site, order ID, and quantity ordered.

Note. The Workflow rule, RO_Create Inst Prod, which is the event performed by the CREATE_IP task, runs the Application Engine program RO_CREATE_IP.

See *PeopleSoft Enterprise CRM 8.9 Product and Item Management PeopleBook*, “Setting Up Products,” Defining Products.

Agreement Creation

When the order contains an agreement product, the Agreement Creation Phase will create the new agreement, or update the selected existing agreement with the products being covered.

Note. The Workflow Rule RO_Create Agreement which is the event performed by the CREATE_AG task, runs the Application Engine program RO_CREATE_AG.

See *PeopleSoft Enterprise CRM 8.9 Application Fundamentals PeopleBook*, “Setting Up and Managing Agreements and Warranties”.

Publish Order

When the order is fulfilled by an external system, this phase publishes the order details, provided the application message CRM_SALES_ORDER is active.

When the PeopleSoft Contracts integratin is in effect, and the order contains service or agreement products, this phase will publish the CONTRACT_TXN application message, if the message is active.

Note. The Workflow rule, RO_EIP Publish, which is the event performed by the PUB_NEW_ORDER task, runs the Application Engine program RO_EIP_PUB.

See [Chapter 6, “Integrating with Fulfillment and Billing Systems,” page 87.](#)

Order Email Confirmation

This phase uses the Multi-Channel Framework to send an email confirmation to the primary email address of the contact on the order. On completion of this phase, the system creates a “correspondence” entry on the Related Objects page of the order. The confirmation email provides a current snapshot of the order, including order number, status, order line details, order totals, and shipping details.

If no primary email address exists for the order contact, no email confirmation is sent.

Note. The Workflow rule, RO Order Email Confirmation, which is the event performed by the ORDER_EMAIL task, runs the Application Engine program RO_SND_EMAIL.

Shipment Completion

This phase examines the status of the order header for a *Completed* or *Cancelled* status. If the order is found to be complete or canceled, this phase exits with a *Successful* status.

If the order contains service or agreement products, the order line status for these products will be set to *Complete* as no fulfillment process is necessary. If it is found that this order contains *only* service or agreement products, the order header status will be set to *Completed* and this phase exits with a *Successful* status.

Should this order contain products requiring fulfillment, this phase will wait until the fulfillment process notifies the business project that all lines are fulfilled. This can happen through the Advanced Shipping Notice, Sales Order Status or Real-Time Status EIPs. Once the business project is notified that all lines are fulfilled, this phase exits with a *Successful* status.

Note. The Workflow rule RO_Check Shipment Completion, which is the event performed by the CHK_SHP_COMPLETE task, runs the Application Engine program RO_SHP_OVR.

Service Order Creation

Installed products created in an earlier phase may need a service order created. This phase creates service orders for any installed products that are flagged as Service Order Required on the Product Definition page. The service listed on the Product Definition page is used to create the service orders. This phase is the final phase of the business project, and it does not run until the order is completed or canceled.

Note. The Workflow rule RO_Create Service Order, which is the event performed by the CREATE_SO task, runs the Application Engine program RO_CREATE_SO.

Viewing the Order Maintenance Business Project

Access the Business Project Status page.

BP Status

BP Definition

Business Project Status

Business Project:

Order Change BP

Status:

Complete

Description:

Capture ID-44bf36c3f74811d6a888

Business Project Tree

Tree Type:

Task Tree

[First](#) | [Previous](#) | [Next](#) | [Last](#) | [Left](#) | [Right](#)

- Order Email Confirmation Phase
 - Order Email Confirmation
- Publish Order Change
 - Publish Changed Order
- Order Changes Complete
 - Check Order Change Completion
- Installed Product Creation Ph.
 - Create Installed Products
- Order Notification Phase
 - Order Notification

Phase Detail

Phase:

Order Email Confirmation Phase

Status:

Complete

Transition Rule:

All Complete All Success

Target Phase:

Comments:

Save and Update Tree

Last Maintained By:

Last Modified:

[Return To Order](#)

Business Project Status page

Order Maintenance Business Project Phases

Order Email Confirmation This is the same phase that is used in the Order Capture business project. It provides the current snapshot of the order following order maintenance.

Publish Order Change When the order is to be fulfilled by an external system, this phase publishes the order maintenance details, if the application message CRM_SALES_ORDER_CHANGE is active.

When the PeopleSoft Contracts integratin is in effect, and the order contains service or agreement products, this phase will publish the CONTRACT_TXN application message, if the message is active.

Note. The Workflow rule RO EIP Change Pub, which is the event performed by the PUB_CHG_ORDER task, runs the Application Engine program RO_EIP_CHPUB.

See [Chapter 6, “Integrating with Fulfillment and Billing Systems,” page 87.](#)

Order Changes Complete

This phase examines the status of the order history (RO_HISTORY) by looking for any change history records with *Open* status. If no open history records are found, this phase exits with a successful completion. If the open history records exist, this phase will wait until it is notified that the changes have been processed.

The Sales Order Change Notice EIP will inform the business project that the requested changes have been processed and will allow this phase to exit with a *Successful* status.

Note. The Workflow rule RO_Check Order Changes, which is the event performed by the CHK_ORDCH_COMPL task, runs the Application Engine program RO_ORDCH_OVR.

Installed Product Creation

The order may contain products that require an installed product, as indicated by the Installed Product page in the Product Definition component. For any order lines that were maintained that require installed products, this phase adds, changes, or deletes the installed products as necessary.

Maintenance actions involved in adding, creating, or deleting installed products include adding new lines to the order, changing the quantity of existing lines on the order, or canceling lines on the order.

In addition, when creating installed products for serialized items, the system creates one installed product for each quantity ordered. For nonserialized items, the system creates a single installed product for the entire quantity ordered on the order line.

Installed products inherit values from the order, such as the customer information, site, order ID, and quantity ordered.

Note. The Workflow rule RO_Create Inst Prod, which is the event performed by the CREATE_IP task, runs the Application Engine program RO_CREATE_IP.

Order Notification

This phase determines the confirmation or rejection of the requested order maintenance by examining the order history (RO_HISTORY). Should notifications be required for the order, as defined in the Order Capture business unit setup, this phase uses correspondence management to create a maintenance confirmation email, and may also create a worklist entry for the customer service representative who entered the most recent order maintenance.

Note. The Workflow rule RO Order Change Notification, which is the event performed by the ORDER_NOTIFY task, runs the Application Engine program RO_ORD_NOTIF.

See [Chapter 6, “Integrating with Fulfillment and Billing Systems,” page 87.](#)

Viewing the Quote Business Project

Access the Business Project Status page.

Business Project Status

Refresh |

Business Project CORE_QUOTE_BP **Type** Main Business Project

Description Order Capture Quote BP

Status Complete

Parent Object Information Capture ID-CRQ0300078

Business Project

*Tree Type Task Tree

First | Previous | Next | Last | Left | Right

- ✓ Order Email Confirmation Phase
- ✓ Order Email Confirmation
- ✓ Publish Order
- ✓ Publish New Order

Phase Detail

Phase Order Email Confirmation Phase

Status Complete

Transition Rule All Complete All Success

Target Phase

Comments

Last Maintained By JPEPPER

Last Modified 06/04/2004 2:58PM

Save and Update

Access the Business Project Status page

Phases

Order Email Confirmation This is the same phase that is used in the Order Capture business project. It provides the current snapshot of the quote.

Publish Order When using an external fulfillment system, this phase publishes the quote details, if the application message CRM_QUOTE is active.

Note. The Workflow rule RO_EIP Publish, which is the event performed by the PUB_NEW_ORDER task, runs the Application Engine program RO_EIP_PUB.

See [Chapter 6, “Integrating with Fulfillment and Billing Systems,” page 87.](#)

See Also

PeopleSoft Enterprise CRM 8.9 Automation and Configuration Tools PeopleBook, “Using Business Projects,” Monitoring Business Projects

CHAPTER 6

Integrating with Fulfillment and Billing Systems

This chapter provides an overview of fulfillment and discusses how to:

- Activate enterprise integration points (EIPs).
- Create autonumbering for orders and quotes.
- Map line statuses.
- Publish order and quote messages.
- Subscribe to order status messages.
- Subscribe to order and quote acknowledgements.
- Subscribe to advanced shipping notices (ASNs).
- Manage externally originating orders.
- Integrate with billing systems.

Understanding Fulfillment

This section discusses:

- Integration setup.
- EIPs.
- Activation of EIPs for Use with PeopleSoft SCM.
- Order maintenance EIPs.

See Also

[Chapter 3, “Setting Up PeopleSoft Order Capture,” Defining Integrations and Mappings, page 57](#)

[Chapter 2, “Defining PeopleSoft Order Capture Business Units,” page 15](#)

Integration Setup

The primary setup of PeopleSoft Order Capture integration occurs in the PeopleSoft Order Capture Integration Workbench. The Integration Workbench is designed so that all of your fulfillment and maintenance activity can first be configured there. There are also a few fields that must be populated on the Business Unit Definition page.

EIPs

PeopleSoft Order Capture uses EIPs to transfer information between itself and an order fulfillment system, such as PeopleSoft Order Management or PeopleSoft Inventory. These integration points enable you to configure your PeopleSoft Customer Relationship Management (PeopleSoft CRM) collaborative selling solution to work with any third-party fulfillment system or enterprise application integration (EAI) system.

Note. Our delivered EIPs are configured for integration with PeopleSoft Supply Chain Management (SCM), which provides corresponding EIPs for example, EIPs that publish the information for which PeopleSoft CRM listens. Integration with other fulfillment or EAI systems may require the use of the PeopleTools Integration Broker to build the necessary transformation layer on top of the existing EIPs that PeopleSoft delivers.

PeopleSoft provides the following comprehensive set of EIPs to support the order fulfillment process:

| EIP | Description | Message / Transaction Name | Relationships | Type |
|--------------------------|--|---------------------------------------|---------------|------------------------|
| Get Autonumber | Requests an ID number (to be used for a new order or quote) from your fulfillment system. This EIP is used only when autonumbering is used for order ID assignment. | | | Outbound / Synchronous |
| Get Order Status | Requests current order and order line status from your fulfillment system. | SCM_GET_ORD_STATUS and SCM_ORD_STATUS | ORDER_STATUS | Outbound / Synchronous |
| Get Product Availability | Requests product availability information from your fulfillment system. Note. The Get Product Availability EIP gives PeopleSoft CRM users on-demand access to product availability information. Users click the Check Availability button on the order or quote Entry Form page to initiate the transaction. | SCM_GET_PROD_AVAIL and SCM_PROD_AVAIL | None | Outbound / Synchronous |

| EIP | Description | Message / Transaction Name | Relationships | Type |
|--------------------------------------|---|--|----------------------|-------------------------|
| Publish Order | Sends new orders to your fulfillment system. | CRM_SALES_ORDER and SALES_CRM_ORDER_LOAD | ORDER_PUBLISH | Outbound / Asynchronous |
| Publish Order Change | Sends changed orders to your fulfillment system. | CRM_SALES_ORDER_CHANGE and SALES_CRM_ORDER_CHANGE_LOAD | ORDER_PUBLISH_CH | Outbound / Synchronous |
| Publish Quote | Sends new quotes to your fulfillment system. | CRM_QUOTE and SALES_CRM_QUOTE_LOAD | ORDER_PUBLISH | Outbound / Asynchronous |
| Receive ASN | Listens for ASNs published by your fulfillment system. | ADVANCED_SHIPPING_NOTICE | None | Inbound / Asynchronous |
| Receive Order Acknowledgement | Listens for order acknowledgements published by your fulfillment system. | SALES_ORDER_ACKNOWLEDGEMENT | None | Inbound / Asynchronous |
| Receive Quote Acknowledgement | Listens for quote acknowledgements published by your fulfillment system. | SALES_QUOTE_NOTICE | None | Inbound / Asynchronous |
| Receive Order Change Acknowledgement | Listens for order change acknowledgements published by your fulfillment system. | SALES_ORDER_CHANGE_NOTICE | None | Inbound / Asynchronous |
| Sales Order Status | Listens for order updates published by your fulfillment system. | SALES_ORDER_STATUS | None | Inbound / Asynchronous |

Note. The EIPs listed in the preceding table use PeopleTools Integration Broker messages. Application Message Monitor and Send Master (a PeopleTools testing utility) help you track and test the messages and transformations that make up these EIPs. The Get Autonumber EIP is an exception in that it uses PeopleTools Business Interlink technology.

Activation of EIPs for Use with PeopleSoft SCM

If you are using PeopleSoft SCM, you need to:

- Activate the product, customer, and business unit EIPs.

These EIPs synchronize the customer, product, and business unit data in the two systems. This synchronization is required when you use PeopleSoft SCM as your fulfillment system.

- Activate CRM transactions and relationships for the PSFT_EP node.
- Activate the SCM EIPs that support the CRM/SCM fulfillment integration.

The SCM EIPs for Product Availability and Get Order Status are XML links rather than Integration Broker transactions; the activation process for those EIPs is therefore different.

Order Maintenance EIPs

Once an order is captured in PeopleSoft CRM, it is passed to the fulfillment system for processing. Order changes are sent from and received by the fulfillment system by means of appropriate EIPs. The EIPs support integrations with PeopleSoft SCM and other third-party fulfillment systems. The Get Order Status EIP is used as part of the Order Maintenance process when an order is retrieved for maintenance. This insures that PeopleSoft only allows edits on orders and order lines that have not yet been fulfilled.

Note. Order maintenance messages, such as CRM_SALES_ORDER_CHANGE, always contain RO_HEADER information, and always publish the RO_INTEGRATION, RO_HISTORY, and RO_CHARGE data for the order. The remainder of the CRM_SALES_ORDER_CHANGE data only contains order information that has been added or changed.

Order maintenance activities require that customer service representatives (CSRs) have accurate information about changed orders. The following table explains the four EIPs that form the backbone of PeopleSoft Order Capture's order maintenance activities:

| EIP Name | Object Name | Description | Type |
|----------------------|-----------------------------|--|---------|
| PUBLISH ORDER CHANGE | SALES_CRM_ORDER_CHANGE_LOAD | Notifies PeopleSoft SCM of an order maintenance request. It is a transformation of the CRM_SALES_ORDER_CHANGE message. | Publish |
| PUBLISH ORDER CHANGE | CRM_SALES_ORDER_CHANGE | Notifies nonPeopleSoft fulfillment systems of the order maintenance request. | Publish |

| EIP Name | Object Name | Description | Type |
|------------------------------------|---------------------------|---|-----------|
| SALES ORDER CHANGE ACKNOWLEDGEMENT | SALES_ORDER_CHANGE_NOTICE | Notifies PeopleSoft Order Capture when changes are processed in SCM. | Subscribe |
| SALES ORDER STATUS | SALES_ORDER_STATUS | Notifies PeopleSoft Order Capture of the current state of the order in SCM. | Subscribe |

Here is a complete list of the SCM EIPs to activate for complete fulfillment functionality:

- SALES_CRM_ORDER_LOAD
- SALES_CRM_QUOTE_LOAD
- ADVANCED_SHIPPING_NOTICE
- SALES_ORDER_ACKNOWLEDGEMENT
- SALES_QUOTE_NOTICE
- SALES_CRM_ORDER_CHANGE_LOAD
- SALES_ORDER_CHANGE_NOTICE
- SALES_ORDER_STATUS

Activating EIPs

You need to activate your fulfillment EIPs. If you are integrating with PeopleSoft SCM, you need to activate the Order Management and Inventory EIPs listed in the previous section as well.

This section discusses how to activate Integration Broker EIPs.

Activating Integration Broker EIPs

Integration Broker EIPs are inactive when delivered. To activate EIPs, activate each of the following elements:

- *PeopleTools Application Messages:* To activate a message from PeopleTools Application Designer, open the Message Properties dialog box and select the Active check box on the User tab.

To activate a message subscription, right-click the message subscription and open the Message Subscription Properties dialog box. Select the Active check box to activate the subscription.

- *Integration Broker Transactions:* To activate a transaction, access the Transaction Detail page and set the Status to *Active*.

You access this page from the Node Definitions component. If you do not first activate the PeopleTools Application Message, you receive a warning message when setting the transaction status to *Active*.

- *Integration Broker Relationships:* To activate a relationship and its transformations, access the Nodes page and set the relationship status to *Active*.

Save the Nodes page, and then access the Trans Modifiers page. For each transformation, select *Edit* to open that transaction and set the status to *Active*. Save and select Return to Transaction List. You access this page from the Relationships component.

Note. Integration Broker transactions and Integration Broker relationships are defined against node, PSFT_EP. If your PeopleSoft Order Management system uses a different node name, then you need to create Integration Broker relationships for the node name being used. Use the Integration Broker Transactions, Node Definitions screen. The copy utility enables the PSFT_EP transactions to be copied to a new node name.

Creating Autonumbering for Orders and Quotes

You can choose either the autonumbering or grid option for your orders and quotes. Autonumbers are controlled by business unit. When you set up autonumbering, you choose the business unit that controls autonumber generation and specify whether autonumbers are generated in the PeopleSoft CRM system or in an external fulfillment system.

Choosing a Business Unit to Control Autonumber Generation

When you define a PeopleSoft Order Capture business unit, you map it to a PeopleSoft Order Management business unit. You can map multiple PeopleSoft Order Capture business units to a single order management business unit. Therefore, to ensure a single source for all numbers that are sent to the order management system, PeopleSoft CRM uses the order management business unit to drive autonumbering. For example, if order capture business unit A is mapped to order management business unit B, then when you create an order in business unit A, its number is generated based on the rules for business unit B.

Note. By design, PeopleSoft SCM cannot use PeopleSoft CRM as its autonumbering master for orders and quotes, only for customers, contacts, and products.

Establishing an External ID Source for Orders and Quotes

You can generate order and quote numbers in the PeopleSoft CRM system or in your order fulfillment system. If the PeopleSoft CRM system does not have an external autonumbering master for orders and quotes, then order numbers are created locally. In this case, be sure that your autonumbering rules include a CRM-specific prefix so that numbers are unique across both your PeopleSoft CRM and order fulfillment system. If your fulfillment system is the autonumbering master, the Get Autonumber EIP fetches order numbers from the external system as orders are created. Because order numbers in both systems come from a common autonumbering definition, this configuration ensures that order numbers are unique across both systems.

Note. The external ID for an order or a quote in PeopleSoft Order Capture is used to identify the order or quote in your fulfillment system. The RO_INTEGRATION table stores the external ID data. This table stores the external ID by source code (for example, SCM), thus allowing for multiple external IDs per PeopleSoft CRM order. In addition to storing the external order number, we use this table to store a mapping of sequence numbers on header and line notes.

Notes no longer have sequence numbers in PeopleSoft CRM, but PeopleSoft SCM requires a sequence number to identify a note, which is why we map the information in RO_INTEGRATION. In our previous release, EXTERNAL_ID was simply a field on the RO_HEADER table.

Mapping Line Statuses

Once you send an order to your fulfillment system, that system is responsible for tracking status of the order; CRM integration points bring status information into PeopleSoft CRM to display the status of an order.

Understanding Line Status Mappings

Because different systems can use different order statuses, you must map your fulfillment system's statuses to PeopleSoft Order Capture statuses. The Get Order Status EIP reads the map and converts your fulfillment system's statuses into PeopleSoft Order Capture statuses. For line statuses, *Partial* means that if a part of one line is backordered and part is shipped, it is in fact, partially shipped.

Header status mappings may differ slightly. PeopleSoft delivers a map for all the PeopleSoft Order Management statuses. If you integrate with a different fulfillment system, modify the map accordingly.

Note. PeopleSoft Order Capture maps the status values to node, PSFT_EP, and if you are using a different node name for your Order Management system, you need to enter status mappings against your node name. The node name is read-only once the data is saved.

The following table shows the delivered line status mappings for SCM statuses:

| SCM Status | CRM Status | CRM Partial Status |
|--------------------|--|---------------------------------|
| X (Canceled) | 1 (Canceled) | 1 (Canceled) |
| Q (Requisitioned) | 1000 (Open) | 1100 (Partially Open) |
| U (Purchased) | 1000 (Open) | 1100 (Partially Open) |
| B (Backordered) | 2000 (Backordered) | 2100 (Partially Backordered) |
| P (Pending) | 3000 (Pending) | 3100 (Partially Pending) |
| H (On Hold) | 3500 (Fulfillment Hold) Note. Holds that originate in PeopleSoft CRM have the status, 9000. This is to differentiate a hold that originated in PeopleSoft CRM (status 9000), from a hold that originated in SCM. | 3500 (Fulfillment Hold) |
| O (In Fulfillment) | 4000 (In Fulfillment) | 4100 (Partially In Fulfillment) |
| K (Picked) | 5000 (Picked) | 5100 (Partially Picked) |
| C (Closed) | 6000 (Shipped) | 6100 (Partially Shipped) |
| S (Shipped) | 6000 (Shipped) | 6100 (Partially Shipped) |

Publishing Order and Quote Messages

When you capture an order or quote in PeopleSoft Order Capture, the system instantiates the `CORE_ORDER_BP` or `CORE_QUOTE_BP` business project. Both of these business projects include a task that runs the `RO_EIP_PUB` Application Engine process, which triggers the Publish Order and Publish Quote EIPs. These EIPs, which consist of the `CRM_SALES_ORDER` and `CRM_SALES_QUOTE` messages, make order and quote information available to your fulfillment system. PeopleSoft delivers the Integration Broker transformation rules required to integrate with SCM; integration with other systems requires additional transformation rules.

If you use PeopleSoft Order Management, EIPs receive the transformed messages and enter order data into Order Management staging tables. The orders have a source code of *CRM* and start with a status of *Open*.

Running Batch Jobs in PeopleSoft Order Management (PeopleSoft SCM customers only)

Subsequent to order submission, the PeopleSoft Order Management fulfillment process starts with the `OMEC` process followed by the `OMBACK` process; `OMBACK` moves the data from the staging tables into the order tables. In Order Management, you can set up exclusions to choose which subprocesses within `OMBACK` to run or skip based on the order source code. Because orders that originate in PeopleSoft CRM already have tax, freight, and pricing information, you should configure `OMBACK` to skip tax, freight, and pricing calculations for orders with the PeopleSoft CRM source code.

There are four specific SCM processes you need to run to complete the pre-fulfillment tasks. These consist of:

1. Order Validation Process (`OMEC`)
2. Order Completion Process (`OMBACK`)
3. Outbound Acknowledgement (`OMEC Outbound`)
4. Data Exchange (`Data Publish`)

| Batch Job | Description | Steps |
|----------------------------|--|---|
| 1: Order Validation (OMEC) | <p>When you submit an order, the transaction is loaded into order staging tables. We first need to run the Electronic Commerce SQR process (OMEC), which:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Parses data such as customer information and product information to ensure that it is valid. • Sets system defaults and status flags for subsequent processes. • Loads data into the production order tables (order staging data found to have errors is not loaded into the production tables until the errors have been resolved). | <p>To run the OMEC batch job:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. In the FDM menu, navigate to Order Management, Electronic Commerce, Validate Staged Orders/RFQs. 2. Add a new Run Control ID. 3. In the Processing Options group box, select the Inbound Order/RFQ Activity check box. <hr/> <p>Note. This will make 2 extra fields (Transaction Type and EIP Control ID) available in the Processing Parameters group box.</p> <hr/> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 4. Leave the remaining 3 “queue” check boxes in Processing Options unchecked. 5. In the Processing Parameters group box, choose the specific (Order Management) Business Unit you specified on the Order Capture Definition 6. Choose the Transaction Type of <i>PO</i> (Inbound Sales Order). 7. Leave the EIP Control ID field blank. 8. Click the RUN button. This tells the system to process our orders that are sitting in the staging tables. You will automatically be taken to the Process Scheduler Request. 9. Choose the Server Name, <i>PSNT</i>, and then click <i>OK</i>. You will return to the Electronic Commerce page. 10. Click the Process Monitor link and examine the Run Status of your job. You are looking to see the status change from <i>Posting</i> to <i>Success</i>. Click Refresh repeatedly to see if the status has changed. |

| Batch Job | Description | Steps |
|------------------------------|---|--|
| 2. Order Completion (OMBACK) | <p>The Order Completion process (OMBACK):</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Applies the agreement, sold to customer, ship to customer, bill to customer, and order group defaults to the order header and order lines. • Performs order pricing, and does tax defaulting and tax calculations. • Processes estimated shipments and external freight calculations. | <p>To run the OMBACK batch job:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Navigate to Order Management, Quotes and Orders, Process Orders, Order Completion 2. Add a new Run Control ID. 3. Select the same Business Unit you chose previously in the From Business Unit field. <hr/> <p>Note. The To Business Unit field automatically populates with the same Business Unit.</p> <hr/> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 4. In the From Order Number and To Order Number fields, select the entire range of your pending orders, and then click <i>Run</i>. <hr/> <p>Note. You will automatically be taken to the Process Scheduler Request.</p> <hr/> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 5. As with the previous job, choose the Server Name, <i>PSNT</i>, then click <i>OK</i>. 6. Click the Process Monitor link, and examine the Run Status of your job. You are looking to see the status change from <i>Posting</i> to <i>Success</i>. Click Refresh repeatedly to see if the status has changed. <hr/> <p>Note. You can now view orders in the PeopleSoft SCM system.</p> |

| Batch Job | Description | Steps |
|---|--|---|
| 3. Outbound Acknowledgement (OMEC Outbound) | The Outbound Publish process (OMEC Outbound) puts entries in the order acknowledgement queue, which are subsequently used to publish order acknowledgements to PeopleSoft CRM. | <p>To run the OMEC batch job:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. In the FDM menu, navigate to Order Management, Electronic Commerce, Validate Staged Orders/RFQs. 2. Select the Run Control ID you created when you ran OMEC. 3. 3. Uncheck the Inbound Order/RFQ Activity check box, and check the Acknowledgement Queue. 4. Click Run, and you will go to the Process Scheduler Request. 5. Select the <i>PSNT</i> Server Name, and click <i>OK</i>. 6. Click the Process Monitor link on the Electronic Commerce page. 7. Examine the Run Status of your job. You are looking to see the status change from <i>Posting</i> to <i>Success</i>. Click Refresh repeatedly to see if the status has changed. |

| Batch Job | Description | Steps |
|---------------------------------|---|--|
| 4. Data Exchange (Data Publish) | The Data Exchange job is used to publish the Sales Order Acknowledgement message to PeopleSoft CRM, using the information from the order acknowledgement queue. | <p>To run the Data Publish job:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. In the FDM menu, navigate to Data Exchanges, Publish Outbound Message. 2. Select your existing Run Control ID. 3. On the Publish Outbound Message screen, there are a variety of check boxes. Select the Sales Order Acknowledgement check box. The Sales Order Acknowledgement will change to a hyperlink. Click on this link. 4. On the Order Acknowledgement Message Selection Criteria page, first choose your Business Unit and then select <i>CRM</i> as the Source Code. Leave everything else blank. <hr/> <p>Note. In the Outbound Messages Selected group box, <i>Order Acknowledgement Queue</i> is pre-selected.</p> <hr/> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 5. Click <i>OK</i>. This takes you back to the Publish Outbound Message page. Click <i>Run</i>. 6. Enter <i>PSNT</i> as the Server Name, and click <i>OK</i>. Then click on the Process Monitor link. <p>If the orders are <i>In Process</i>, this means that you have run the entire cycle of SCM batch jobs successfully.</p> |

Note. If you navigate to Order Management, Quotes and Orders, Create/Update Order, and choose your business unit, you can search for any order and see that a specific order is *In Process*.

Understanding the Transformation Process

PeopleSoft delivers transformation rules that you can use when sending information to PeopleSoft Order Management. The Application Engine program that performs the transformation has three stages:

1. It evaluates products and packages that were ordered and transforms order lines as follows:
 - a. Service products are not sent at all, but other products are sent exactly as defined in the order line
 - b. Product packages are sent as packages, as there is a 1 to 1 mapping of information with PeopleSoft Order Management here. However, lightly configured packages are broken into multiple order lines and packages contained in other packages are broken into multiple order lines. Each product included in the package within a package is given its own order line. For example, if Package

1 consists of product A and Package 2, while Package 2 consists of products B and C, then an order line for Package 1 is broken into three order lines: one each for products A, B, and C.

Note. If you use PeopleSoft SCM and you set pricing at the package level (rather than the component level), no pricing details are sent; each component is sent with a price of zero. Therefore, if you are a SCM customer, pricing for dynamic packages needs to be at the component level.

2. It performs an XSL transformation to structure the EIP data for Order Management.
3. It adds SCM customer information (for example, bill to and ship to addresses) to the order data by looking at the tables (RB_INT_CUSTOMER and RB_INT_CUST_ADS) that map PeopleSoft CRM customer data to SCM customer data. This mapping is maintained by the Customer Sync EIP.

Note. If you use PeopleSoft SCM as your fulfillment system, you must keep customer and product data synchronized in the two systems. The Customer Sync and Product Sync EIPs manage this synchronization.

Understanding the Message Content

This section describes certain parts of the order and quote messages published by CRM. For more details about the messages, refer to the EIP catalog and the message definitions. Order and quote messages published by PeopleSoft CRM include:

- *EXTERNAL_ID field from the Integration table RO_INTEGRATION:* This is the ID that maps to the order or quote number in the fulfillment system.
- *Order Management business unit:* This is the business unit that is associated with the PeopleSoft Order Capture business unit (on the Order Capture Business Unit Definition page).
- *An order source code of “CRM”:* If PeopleSoft Order Management is your fulfillment system, this code affects certain processes. For example, Order Management allows PeopleSoft CRM orders to be price protected.
- *Order line numbers:* PeopleSoft Order Capture expects the fulfillment system to carry the line numbers through the entire fulfillment process. For example, if an order has five lines and lines two, four, and five are sent to PeopleSoft Order Management, then the order in Order Management has three order lines numbered 2, 4, and 5. This enables order line tracking even when different order lines are sent to different fulfillment systems.
- *Pricing:* This includes order-level discounts, shipping, and tax information.
- *A price protection setting:* This prevents Order Management from altering price information.
- *Order level discount information..*
- *Giveaway information:* The ORDER_LINE_TAG field ties a giveaway to a specific order line.
- *Credit card information:* PeopleSoft stores encrypted credit card data, which is what the message sends.
- *Quote messages:* Quotes include additional information specific to quotes, such as the quote due date and expiration date.

Subscribing to Order Status Messages

In PeopleSoft SCM, the Data Exchanges > Publish Outbound Message utility enables you to publish a snapshot of the order as it exists in the SCM system. The Sales Order/Quote Status option enables you to publish orders by business unit, source code (for example, CRM), customer, order type, order number range, order date range, and order change date range. Also, you can choose to publish orders for specific order status values.

PeopleSoft Order Capture subscribes to these `SALES_ORDER_STATUS` messages to provide a method for synchronizing changes made to the order in SCM, so that the order reflects the same information. For example, if an order is maintained in SCM, and a new order line is added, the `SALES_ORDER_STATUS` message delivers that order and its new line to PeopleSoft Order Capture.

Also, as part of the `SALES_ORDER_STATUS` processing, the current order status is updated, just as the Get Order Status EIP provides.

If the `SALES_ORDER_STATUS` message contains orders that did not originate in PeopleSoft Order Capture (for example, EDI orders), then order header information is created so that these orders are viewable through the Order Search screen. When users drill down for further details, they are transferred to the uniform resource locator (URL) specified in the Source Code definition for that order. If no URL is specified, then the user is only able to view the header information for that order.

Getting On-Demand Status Updates

The Get Order Status EIP provides on-demand status updates. Users invoke the update by clicking the Refresh button on the Order Tracking page.

The Get Order Status EIP updates:

- The status for individual order lines.
- The scheduled shipping date and the scheduled arrival dates.

The EIP also updates the `RO_LINE_HIST` table, which stores a history of line statuses. You can query this history, but it does not appear on any PeopleSoft Order Capture pages.

Subscribing to Order and Quote Acknowledgements

In PeopleSoft SCM, the Batch Publish job publishes regular acknowledgments (the `SALES_ORDER_ACKNOWLEDGEMENT` and `SALES_QUOTE_NOTICE` messages) and change acknowledgements (the `SALES_ORDER_CHANGE_NOTICE` message) for orders that come from electronic commerce channels—that is, for orders that are entered into the SCM staging tables.

Note. Change acknowledgements are not published for orders that originate within PeopleSoft Order Management.

In PeopleSoft CRM, the Receive Order Acknowledgement and Receive Quote Acknowledgement EIPs subscribe to SCM messages, while the Receive Order Change Acknowledgement EIP subscribes to the change acknowledgement message. When PeopleSoft CRM receives a change acknowledgement, the order status and change history are updated, while rejected order changes are rolled back. When PeopleSoft Order Capture receives a regular order acknowledgement, it updates the order header status to In Process, and it sets the order line statuses to the line status map that you established in the Integration Workbench. When an SCM order line status is set to Open, and this is the status that the acknowledgement message sends, Order Capture maps this to a status of In Fulfillment.

Change History was created with a status of *Open* when order changes were initially submitted. When the change acknowledgement is processed, changes that were accepted by the Fulfillment system are marked Confirmed, and changes that are not accepted are marked Rejected. When a requested change is rejected, the original values on the order are restored back to their values prior to the change. For example, if a quantity on an order line was increased from 1 to 2, and that change is rejected because the order line had shipped, the quantity is restored to 1 following the processing of the change acknowledgement.

Change Acknowledgement updates order statuses just as the Get Order Status EIP does, providing a current snapshot of the order status at the time the Change Acknowledgement was published. Order statuses are set based on the status mapping that you establish. The Change Acknowledgement also creates order notifications based upon the setup for the Order Capture business unit.

Notifications may be specified to go to the customer, the CSR, both, or none, based on the acceptance of the changes that were requested. In addition, when notifications are specified for the CSR, the notification is sent based on the CSR's preferred notification setting as found in the Worker component, which can be email, worklist, or both. Notifications to the customer are sent to the email address of the contact listed on the order, or for a consumer order, the consumer's email address. If there is no email specified for the contact or consumer, notifications cannot be sent to the customer. Email notifications show the changes requested, along with the acceptance status of Confirmed or Rejected, and display the order following the Change Acknowledgement processing. A CSR's Worklist notification is a link to the order in the Order Capture Worklist.

Subscribing to ASNs

PeopleSoft Inventory publishes ASNs that provide the number of items that have shipped for a specific order line. These messages do not contain status information about items that have not shipped.

The Receive ASN EIP subscribes to the ASN message.

When PeopleSoft CRM receives an ASN, it updates statuses using the following logic:

1. The shipped quantity from the ASN is added to any previously recorded quantity shipped.
2. If the total shipped quantity is greater than or equal to the quantity ordered, the line and all items in the line have a status of Shipped.
3. If the total shipped quantity is less than the quantity ordered, the system assumes that the items with the highest status were shipped and adjusts statuses accordingly.

Since status numbers increase as an item moves through the fulfillment process, the unshipped item with the highest status is considered the most likely item to have been shipped.

For example, consider the following status update history for an order line consisting of ten items:

| Time | Message | Status From Message | Complete Status |
|----------|-----------------|---------------------|-------------------------------|
| 10:00 am | Acknowledgement | 10 In Fulfillment | 10 In Fulfillment |
| 1:00 pm | ASN | 5 Shipped | 5 Shipped 5 In Fulfillment |

| Time | Message | Status From Message | Complete Status |
|---------|--------------|---|---|
| 2:00 pm | Order status | 5 Shipped 2 Backordered 3 On Hold | 5 Shipped 3 On Hold 2 Backordered |
| 5:00 pm | ASN | 3 Shipped | 8 Shipped 2 Backordered |

At 10:00 am, the order was submitted. An order acknowledgment message caused the system to set the status of all ten items to In Fulfillment.

At 1:00 pm, an ASN message indicated that five items had been shipped. Status changes for these five items and the remaining five items keep the status In Fulfillment.

At 2:00 pm, the order status message provided a complete status that replaced the previous status information.

At 5:00 pm, an ASN message indicated that three more items were shipped. Although the message does not specify which items were shipped, the system makes the following adjustments:

- The system adjusted the quantity shipped: the three additional shipped items are added to the five that were already known to have been shipped.
- Because the On Hold (status number 9000) has a higher status number than Back Ordered (status number 2000), the system assumed that the three items on hold were the ones that were shipped and modified the status accordingly.

Note. If an ASN is received for any component of a static package, the entire package is considered to have been shipped. Also, when any line on the order is marked with Shipped status, the Order Header is marked as Complete.

Managing Externally Originating Orders

This section explains how PeopleSoft Order Capture handles externally originating orders, and explains how to specify URLs for tracking purposes.

Handling External Orders

PeopleSoft Order Capture uses the Receive Orders EIP to create PeopleSoft CRM records for orders that originate in your fulfillment system (or any other external system). Unlike the Get Order Status EIP, the Receive Orders EIP does not attempt to match the external system's order numbers with Order Capture order numbers. Each Order Capture business unit definition specifies the source code that is used for orders created in the PeopleSoft CRM system. Orders that are entered by the Receive Orders EIP have a source code provided by the external system. Make sure that the source codes are different for orders that originate internally and externally.

Note. If a user attempts to view an order with a source code other than the one specified in the business unit definition, the system reroutes the user to a page that you specify. If you haven't specified a URL, then you see the header information in order tracking but you can't click on the order for details.

You can specify different target pages to be used when accessing orders in the internal Order Tracking page and the external (self-service) Order Tracking page. The system marks orders that originate outside of CRM, and if you provide the system with the URL for the external system, then a user who attempts to view such an order in the CRM order tracking pages is automatically redirected to the system where the order originated.

Integrating with Billing Systems

PeopleSoft Order Capture integrates with PeopleSoft Transaction Billing Processor to allow access to standard billing functionality such as revenue recognition structure, billing cycle details, and account rules for applying revenue to the General Ledger. It also allows the enterprise to apply surcharges and taxation to billable amounts and process them through user-defined invoice formats.

Setting Up an Integration to PeopleSoft Transaction Billing Processor

This integration is detailed in a chapter in the Services Foundation Peoplebook.

See Also

PeopleSoft Transaction Billing Processor 8.8 PeopleBook.

PeopleSoft Enterprise CRM 8.9 Services Foundation PeopleBook, "Transaction Billing Processor Integration"

Using the PeopleSoft Transaction Billing Processor Integration from PeopleSoft Order Capture

If a contract doesn't exist, the PeopleSoft Order Capture transaction triggers a new contract to be created in the Billing system. Pricing is done by the Enterprise Pricer through PeopleSoft Order Capture. For agreement products, pricing is also done by the Service Pricing routines. PeopleSoft Order Capture sends the total for each order line containing a service or agreement product to the PeopleSoft Transaction Billing Processor.

Note. PeopleSoft Transaction Billing Processor integrates with PeopleSoft Order Capture and enables you to create invoices and recognize revenue for *service* products. However, PeopleSoft Order Capture sends standard products through the integration to PeopleSoft Order Management. PeopleSoft Order Capture uses PeopleSoft Proposal Management to send engagement-type services.

PeopleSoft Order Capture only sends transactions that are ready to be billed to PeopleSoft Transaction Billing Processor. PeopleSoft Order Capture also sends tax parameters, which are used to retrieve the sales and use tax or VAT rate.

See Also

PeopleSoft Transaction Billing Processor 8.8 PeopleBook.

CHAPTER 7

Working with PeopleSoft Service Management

This chapter provides overviews of PeopleSoft Service Management, service management EIPs and business projects, and discusses:

- Working with PeopleSoft Service Management.
- Maintaining service.

Understanding Service Management

The service management functionality provides the interface for the customer service representative (CSR) as well as the self-service user to initiate changes such as addition, replacement, or removal of features to an existing service. It also provides the interface to perform changes at the service level, such as disconnect service, suspend, and resume service.

Service management provides the infrastructure to flow the submitted orders through to the appropriate operations support system applications for provisioning and activation using product actions and product-specific business projects.

Product Actions determine what actions are allowable for specific services and service features. Product Service Feature Relationships provide valid features that can be added to an existing service.

When a customer initially orders service, the service and service features are created in a two-tier hierarchy in the Installed Products component. Service management is the component that is used to change those features associated with an installed service.

Once service has been established, there are several typical transactions and business processes required to manage that service.

The Maintain Service component involves the following service actions:

| Service Change | Definition | Example |
|-------------------------|--|---|
| Change Service Features | An order that changes the features associated with a pre-existing service. This order can be used to add, replace, or remove service features. This order cannot be used to change one service for another, such as wireless for wireline. | Existing wireless customer wants to replace a 500 minute plan with 1000 minute plan. He also wants to cancel the call forwarding feature which he never uses. |

| Service Change | Definition | Example |
|--------------------|---|---|
| Disconnect Service | An order that cancels a pre-existing service. All features related to the service are also canceled. Service features cannot be disconnected by themselves. | Customer wants to switch service providers. He calls to cancel existing service. |
| Suspend Service | An order that changes the status of a pre-existing service to <i>Suspended</i> . Service features cannot be suspended. | Customer is going away for a long vacation and wants to suspend the service. |
| Resume Service | An order that returns the status of an existing service to <i>Active</i> . Resuming service is accomplished by entering an End Date in the Suspend Service line detail. | Customer returns from vacation and wants the service resumed. |
| Renew Service | An order that extends the ending date for a service that is to expire. The service will be repriced during this transaction. | Customer has a subscription to a newspaper that is due to end next month. Customer calls to extend the subscription for another six months. |
| Cancel Service | An order that sets the ending date for a service, and sets the status of the service to <i>Cancelled</i> . This would end any recurring charges for the service. | Customer has a monthly lawncare service and wishes to terminate the service because he is moving. |

Understanding Service Management EIPs and Business Projects

This section discusses:

- Adding service.
- Changing service.
- Suspending service.
- Resuming service.
- Disconnecting service.
- Renewing service.
- Canceling service.
- Business projects.

Add Service

When a CSR or customer places an order for a new service, the add service message gets published to the billing system through the TELCO_NEW_ORDER business project (phase: Telco Add Services).

| Category | Description |
|------------------------------|------------------------------|
| EIP | Add Service |
| Request Message | RBT_NEWSRVC_MSG |
| Message Type | Outbound Asynchronous |
| Message Called From | Service Management Component |
| Channel Name | RBT_SERVICEMGMT_CHNL |
| Configuration Parameter Used | RBTSERVICE |

Change Service

When a CSR or self-service user changes (that is, add, remove or replace) service features of a service in the CRM system, the corresponding change service message gets published to the billing system through the TELCO_CHGSVC business project (phase: Change Services).

This EIP cannot be used to exchange one service for another, such as wireless for wireline.

| Category | Description |
|------------------------------|--|
| EIP | Change Service |
| Request Message | RBT_ADDSRVCFT_MSG (add service feature) RBT_REMOVESRVCFT_MSG (remove service feature) |
| Message Type | Outbound Asynchronous |
| Message Called From | Service Management Component |
| Channel Name | RBT_SERVICEMGMT_CHNL |
| Configuration Parameter Used | RBTSERVICE |

Suspend Service

Only CSRs are able to suspend services. When a CSR suspends a service in the CRM system, the suspend service message gets published to the billing system through the TELCO_SUSPEND business project (phase: Telco Suspend Service).

| Category | Description |
|------------------------------|------------------------------|
| EIP | Suspend Service |
| Request Message | RBT_SUSPENDSRVC_MSG |
| Message Type | Outbound Asynchronous |
| Message Called From | Service Management Component |
| Channel Name | RBT_SERVICEMGMT_CHNL |
| Configuration Parameter Used | RBTSERVICE |

Resume Service

Only CSRs are able to reinstate services. When a CSR resumes a service in the CRM system, the resume service message gets published to the billing system through the TELCO_RESUME business project (phase: Telco Resume Service).

| Category | Description |
|------------------------------|------------------------------|
| EIP | Resume Service |
| Request Message | RBT_RESUMESRVC_MSG |
| Message Type | Outbound Asynchronous |
| Message Called From | Service Management Component |
| Channel Name | RBT_SERVICEMGMT_CHNL |
| Configuration Parameter Used | RBTSERVICE |

Disconnect Service

Customer needs to contact a CSR to terminate services. When a disconnect service request is submitted in the CRM system, the disconnect service message gets published to the billing system through the TELCO_DISCONN business project (phase: DisSvc Disconnect Services).

| Category | Description |
|------------------------------|------------------------------|
| EIP | Disconnect Service |
| Request Message | RBT_REMOVESRVC_MSG |
| Message Type | Outbound Asynchronous |
| Message Called From | Service Management Component |
| Channel Name | RBT_SERVICEMGMT_CHNL |
| Configuration Parameter Used | RBTSERVICE |

Note. For service management-related EIPs, a separate inbound asynchronous message (Message Name: RBT_IPSTATUS_MSG; Channel Name: RBT_NEWACT_CHNL) is needed and that will be used to update the status of service records within the CRM system after status change.

Renew Service

Customer needs to contact a CSR to renew services. When a renew service request is submitted in the CRM system, the generic service management order message gets published and subsequently transformed into the contract transaction message through the SM_ORDER_BP business project. In addition, the SM_RENEW_SVC business project runs to perform the updates to the service installed product and service agreements.

| Category | Description |
|---------------------|---|
| EIP | Contract Transaction |
| Request Message | CRM_SERV_MGT_ORDER (generic service management), CONTRACT_TXN (billing transaction processor) |
| Message Type | Outbound Asynchronous |
| Message Called From | Service Management Component |
| Channel Name | CONTRACT |

Cancel Service

Customer needs to contact a CSR to cancel services. When a cancel service request is submitted in the CRM system, the generic service management order message gets published and subsequently transformed into the contract transaction message through the SM_ORDER_BP business project. In addition, the SM_CANCEL_SVC business project runs to perform the cancel to the service installed product and service agreements.

| Category | Description |
|---------------------|---|
| EIP | Contract Transaction |
| Request Message | CRM_SERV_MGT_ORDER (generic service management), CONTRACT_TXN (billing transaction processor) |
| Message Type | Outbound Asynchronous |
| Message Called From | Service Management Component |
| Channel Name | CONTRACT |

Business Projects

The table shows business projects associated with service management:

| Business Project | Details |
|-----------------------------|--|
| Telco Change Service | This Business Project is instantiated when the Service Type is <i>Change Service</i> . |
| Telco Suspend Order BP | This Business Project is instantiated when the Service Type is <i>Suspend Service</i> . |
| Telco Resume Order BP | This Business Project is instantiated when the Service Type is <i>Resume Service</i> . |
| Telco Disconnect Order BP | This Business Project is instantiated when the Service Type is <i>Disconnect Service</i> . |
| Service Mgmt Cancel Service | This Business Project is instantiated when the Service Type is <i>Cancel Service</i> . |

| Business Project | Details |
|-----------------------------|---|
| Service Management Order BP | This Business Project is instantiated when the service management order is submitted. |
| Service Mgmt Renew Service | This Business Project is instantiated when the Service Type is <i>Renew Service</i> . |

Working with Service Management

This section discusses the pages used to manage services.

Pages Used to Manage Services

| Page Name | Object Name | Navigation | Usage |
|-----------------------------|-------------|--|---|
| Manage Service - Entry Form | RO_FORM | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Service Management, Maintain Service Service Management, Start Service Service Management, Transfer Service Service Management, Stop Service Service Management, View Service Management Order | Use this page to manage customer service requests. You can change, suspend, resume, or disconnect services. |

Maintaining Service

Access the Manage Service - Entry Form page.

Manage Service

Submit

Save

Refresh

Cancel

360 360-Degree View

Personalize

Order ID New

Order Status New

Customer Contact

Credit Rating

Entry Form

Line Details

Holds

Notes

Related Actions

History

Entry

Go To Select One...

Customer

Press search to find existing customers or to create a new customer or company.

Customer

First Name

Last Name

Search

Advanced Search

Header Details

*Business Unit US200 - CRMCO APPLIANCES

*Status New

Show Details

Line Details

No products have been selected.

Click to select the installed service. Only one installed service may be managed per transaction.

Add Installed Service

Totals

| Description | Amount | Currency |
|------------------------|--------|----------|
| Total One Time Charges | 0.00 | USD |

Update Total

Manage Service - Entry Form page

See [Chapter 8, “Managing Orders and Quotes,” Creating Orders or Quotes, page 124.](#)

CHAPTER 8

Managing Orders and Quotes

This chapter provides an overview of PeopleSoft Order Capture and discusses how to:

- Personalize PeopleSoft Order Capture.
- Create orders or quotes.
- Create configurations.
- Enter shipping, payment, and billing information.
- View price adjustments.
- Add notes.
- View summaries.
- Manage holds.
- Maintain orders.
- View related actions.
- View history.

Understanding PeopleSoft Order Capture

This section lists common elements and discusses:

- PeopleSoft Order Capture functionality.
- Hotkeys.
- PeopleSoft Order Capture access.
- Delivered User IDs and User Roles.
- Support for Industry-Specific Dynamic Events.
- Correspondence Generation.

Common Elements Used in This Chapter

Functional buttons in the header and footer toolbars on each PeopleSoft Order Capture page are available to the customer service representative (CSR).

Functional Buttons in the Header or Footer

The following buttons and links provide one-click functionality for PeopleSoft Order Capture:

Submit

Click to save and submit the order or quote for processing.

Save

Click to save the order or quote in its current state.

**Validate**

Click to validate the quote or order and fires all the hold conditions.

**Upsell**

This appears if a marketing campaign is associated with the consumer or company that has been identified on the quote or order, and there is an upsell possibility.

**Convert To Bulk**

Click to change the current order to a bulk order. Bulk orders are used as a template to create multiple orders.

Note. Convert To Bulk is only available for orders.

**Add**

Click to initiate a new quote or order.

**Search**

Click to access the quote and order search page.

**Cancel**

Click to cancel the current quote or order.

Note. Cancel is only available when edits are allowed.

**Refresh**

Click to refresh the view for the current page. This also refreshes the view of an *Open* or *In Process* order that is in the fulfillment cycle with a live status update if the EIP is enabled.

**Copy to Quote**

Click to convert a quote to an order or copy an order to a new quote.

Note. You cannot convert expired quotes to orders.

**Clone**

Click to clone the current order or quote and create a copy of the current instance.

**Maintenance**

Click to begin order maintenance activity for an order submitted to fulfillment, or to begin revision of an open quote.

Note. Maintenance appears only after you submit a quote or order.

**Send Correspondence**

Click this button to activate print or email correspondences.

Note. Send Correspondence appears after you submit a quote or order.

**360-Degree View**

Click to launch the 360-degree viewer.

Personalize

Click to access the Personalize Toolbar page, where you can:

- Select which buttons to display.
- Organize the order of the buttons.
- Select to display or hide the buttons and text.

Display-Only Text in the Header Toolbar

PeopleSoft Order Capture displays the following identifiers in the toolbar:

| | |
|--------------------|---|
| Order ID/Quote ID | PeopleSoft Order Capture sequentially generates order and quote IDs based on Automatic Numbering options or by an ID drawn from the Capture Type Workbench setup. |
| Order/Quote Status | PeopleSoft Order Capture delivers six statuses: <i>Open, Pending, In Process, Hold, Complete, or Canceled.</i> |

Note. You can add or modify statuses that are applicable to your business process in the Setup Workbench.

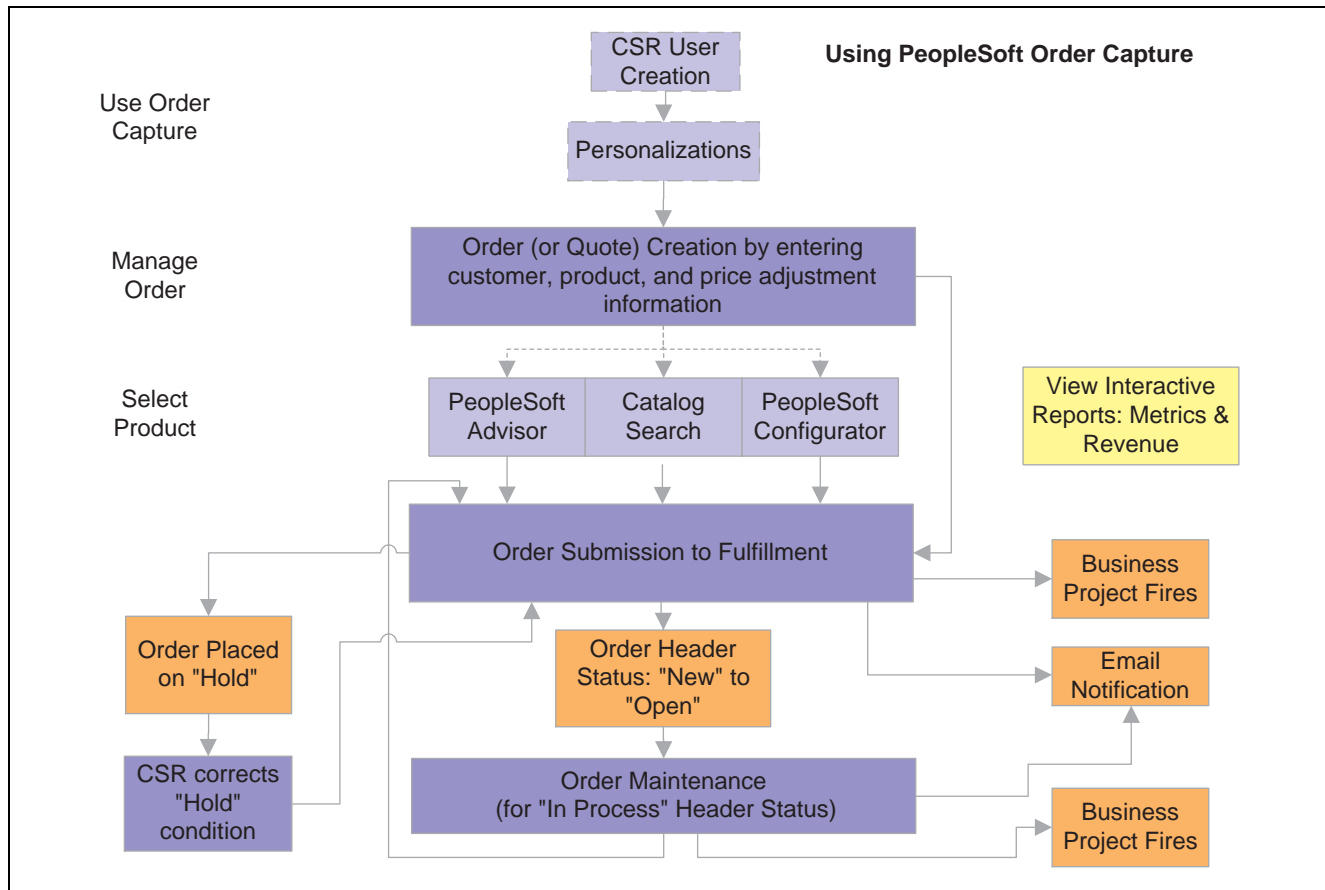
| | |
|----------------|--|
| Customer | This is a Sold To company or Sold To consumer. |
| Customer Value | <p>This is a configurable data element from the Customer Data Model that displays a specific customer demographic.</p> <p>See <i>PeopleSoft Enterprise CRM 8.9 Business Object Management PeopleBook</i>, “Defining Company Business Objects”.</p> |
| Contact | This is a Sold To contact for the company or consumer. |
| Credit Rating | Displays the customer’s credit rating based on what is in the Customer Data Model. |

See Also

Chapter 3, “Setting Up PeopleSoft Order Capture,” Defining Header Statuses, page 36

PeopleSoft Order Capture Functionality

The following graphic identifies the functionality available to PeopleSoft Order Capture CSR:



Using PeopleSoft Order Capture

PeopleSoft Order Capture is designed to enable easy order management for the CSR. The Order Capture system seeks to maximize system resources so as to minimize the CSR's energies. For example, PeopleSoft Order Capture:

- Delivers pages that facilitate rapid order capture.
- Provides icons, hotkeys, and tab ordering to reduce the number of keystrokes and mouse clicks.
- Limits the number of page refreshes (or server trips) so that there is minimal waiting time, if any.
- Defaults known information whenever possible.
- Utilizes a header toolbar that contains functional icons and pertinent display-only order information.
- Provides personalization capabilities to the CSR, whereby the CSR or system administrator can define the preferred means of data entry of product information into the order.
- Enables the CSR to easily personalize orders and quotes.

Hotkeys

PeopleSoft Order Capture simplifies the order entry process by providing the following hotkeys at the header level and the line level.

Use the following hotkeys for header level activity.

Alt + hotkey • *I* - Save

- *O* - Refresh
- *U* - Upsell
- *V* - Convert
- *C* - Clone
- *M* - Maintain
- *A* - Add Product
- *S* - Update Mode

PeopleSoft Order Capture Access

There are various channels through which a PeopleSoft Customer Relationship Management (PeopleSoft CRM) CSR or sales representative can create or view orders and quotes.

Direct Navigation

A CSR can access PeopleSoft Order Capture directly by selecting Orders and Quotes on the PeopleSoft CRM menu. From within Orders and Quotes, the main options are:

- Add Quote.
Create a new quote. This option takes you directly to the quote form for quick and direct access.
- Add Order.
Create a new order. This option takes you directly to the order form for quick and direct access.
- Add Bulk Order.
Create a bulk order. This option takes you directly to the bulk order form and allows you to select multiple recipients that will receive an order.
- Search Orders and Quotes.
Search to find an existing order or quote. This option provides direct access to a search component to find an existing order or quote. From there, you can find the orders that you are looking for and access those orders for inquiry or maintenance purposes.
- Find Products.
Search or browse for a specific product within a specific catalog or across all catalogs.

From PeopleSoft Sales

Sales representatives can quickly and seamlessly navigate to quote or Order Capture from the Products section of the Leads or Opportunities page in PeopleSoft Sales. They can specify a product and then navigate directly to the Entry Form within PeopleSoft Order Capture. Customer and product information relevant to Order Capture then pre-populates from the lead or opportunity to the corresponding order and quote entry fields.

From the 360-Degree View

The 360-degree view of the customer also allows for order and quote entry. CSRs can select the Order/Quote value from the Add Transaction field in Interaction Manager, which takes them directly to the Add a New Order or Quote Capture page in PeopleSoft Order Capture. Known values from the 360-degree view pre-populate the main order entry page.

CSRs can also view recent orders and quotes from their workspaces in Interaction Manager. CSRs see each of the following, by default:

- Order ID/Quote ID.
- Date of order/quote creation.
- Order/quote status.

CSRs can navigate to an existing quote or order by using a link on the order ID or quote ID.

From CTI Integration

PeopleSoft Order Capture integrates with PeopleSoft CTI capabilities. A customer can enter an order ID by using the telephone, and a successful match launches order status for that order ID.

Delivered User IDs and User Roles

PeopleSoft Order Capture delivers the following users and roles:

| User ID | Role Name | Role Description | Access |
|---------|-----------------------|---------------------------------------|---|
| OCADMIN | Order Capture Admin | Administrator | All Order Capture functionality, including the ability to set up Order Capture, but minus the ability to remove holds. |
| OCMGR | Order Capture Manager | Manager | All Order Capture functionality, including the ability to remove holds but minus the ability to set up Order Capture. |
| OCREP | Order Capture Rep | CSR (Customer Service Representative) | All Order Capture functionality, except for 1) the ability to remove holds placed on orders, and 2) the ability to do set up. |

You can adopt the users and roles that PeopleSoft Order Capture delivers, or you can modify them to better suit your business needs:

Note. To modify permissions for the delivered user roles, navigate to PeopleTools, Security, Permissions & Roles, Roles.

See Also

PeopleSoft Enterprise CRM 8.9 Application Fundamentals PeopleBook, “Setting Up PeopleSoft Customer Relationship Management Security and User Preferences”

Support for Industry-Specific Dynamic Events

PeopleSoft Order Capture supports business event logic, in the form of application class sets. These events are used out-of-the-box in the communications industry:

| Supported Event | Description |
|---------------------------|--|
| Product Pre-qualification | This event fires after product and site information has been entered on the order line. The event fires on the first server trip following product and site entry on the order form. |
| Order Pre-qualification | This event fires after the CSR clicks the Save button. This event allows for logic that preprocesses an order before final changes are saved to the database. |

See Also

[Chapter 3, “Setting Up PeopleSoft Order Capture,” Creating Dynamic Events, page 35](#)

Customer Connection, “Understanding Application Classes in PeopleSoft Order Capture and PeopleSoft Order Capture Self Service.”

Correspondence Generation

PeopleSoft Order Capture generates correspondence automatically and manually:

- Automatic correspondence are initiated at the point of order or quote submission.
- Manual correspondences are initiated when the Send Correspondence button in the toolbar is clicked.

Upon order or quote submission, PeopleSoft Order Capture sends automatic email based on the MCF Type setup for Order Confirmation, Quote Confirmation and Order change. A related object is created for each automatic acknowledgement of a correspondence. This appears on the Related Actions tab for the order or quote. Related actions are not created for manual correspondence.

For manual notifications, the CSR clicks the button to access a Create Correspondence page where she can send text messages to pre-populated recipients through different communication channels, either email or print. PeopleSoft Order Capture delivers two templates that can be used when a correspondence is sent:

- *Order Confirmation* is a thank you note with order status information for the customer.
- *Quote Confirmation* is a note stating that the quote has been registered by the system.

You can add attachments to the text message and you can also schedule its exact delivery. After a correspondence is sent, the system automatically creates an interaction on the 360-Degree View for the associated contact.

Note. Before creating a correspondence, make sure that a contact is available on the entry form. The system pre-populates the Recipients field of the correspondence request with the contact defined for the order.

The following table summarizes the possible correspondence activity for PeopleSoft Order Capture:

| Template Name | Channel | Description of Action |
|-----------------------------|-----------------|---|
| Order Confirmation | Email and Print | <p>Emails an order confirmation with the order number, customer name, status, products, billing and shipping information.</p> <p>Prints a PDF or Word document version of order confirmation with the same details as in the email.</p> |
| Order Maintenance | Email and Print | <p>Emails a text of order maintenance with the order number, customer name, status, order change details, products, billing and shipping information.</p> <p>Prints a PDF or Word document version of order maintenance with the same details as in the email.</p> |
| Order Status | Email | The order inquiry application service in ERMS uses this template to respond to structured email with the status of the order. |
| Order Status - Failure | Email | The order inquiry application service in ERMS uses this template to respond to structured email that does not provide valid data. |
| Quote Confirmation | Email and Print | <p>Emails a text of quote confirmation with quote number, customer name, status, products, billing and shipping information.</p> <p>Prints a PDF or Word document version of quote confirmation with the same details as in the email.</p> |
| Sales Quote Proposal Letter | All | <p>Emails the quote with an email cover letter, and an attachment of the quote. The quote details contain quote number, expiration date, and product details.</p> <p>Prints a PDF or Word document version of the quote, and the quote with the same details as in the email.</p> |

See Also

[Chapter 3, “Setting Up PeopleSoft Order Capture,” Defining MCF Types, page 40](#)

[Chapter 3, “Setting Up PeopleSoft Order Capture,” Defining MCF Types, page 55](#)

PeopleSoft Enterprise CRM 8.9 Automation and Configuration Tools PeopleBook,
“Correspondence Management”

Personalizing PeopleSoft Order Capture

This section provides an overview of personalization and discusses how to:

- Choose order entry form personalizations.
- Change the default entry form values.
- Configure search criteria.
- Access PeopleSoft Order Capture features.

Understanding Personalization

You can personalize defaults to make your experience with PeopleSoft Order Capture as efficient and as user-friendly as possible. PeopleSoft provides a Personalizations feature that enables you to change the defaults for the most commonly used functions within PeopleSoft Order Capture.

Note. PeopleSoft Order Capture also delivers powerful Workbench functionality whereby you create application class sets that modify Order Capture settings to best suit your business processes.

See Also

[Chapter 3, “Setting Up PeopleSoft Order Capture,” page 25](#)

Customer Connection, “Understanding Application Classes in PeopleSoft Order Capture and PeopleSoft Order Capture Self Service”

Pages Used to Personalize PeopleSoft Order Capture

| Page Name | Object Name | Navigation | Usage |
|----------------------------------|-----------------|---|---|
| Personalizations | PSUSERSELFPRSNL | My Personalizations | Choose order entry form personalizations. You can also restore defaults from this page by clicking the Restore Defaults button. |
| Option Category: General Options | PSUSERSELFPRSNL | My Personalizations, Click Personalize Options (for General Options Description). | Change the default entry form values or restore category defaults. Override any of six defaults for Order Capture. |

Choosing Order Entry Form Personalizations

Access the Personalizations page.

The screenshot shows the 'Personalizations' page. At the top, there is a section titled 'Personalizations' with a link for 'Documentation'. Below this, a message states: 'Standard settings are in effect. Changes to Personalization settings require you to log off and log back on in order to take effect.' A section titled 'Personalization Categories' contains a table with two columns: 'Description' and 'Personalize Option'. The table lists four categories: 'General Options', 'Regional Settings', 'System & Application Messages', and 'Navigation Personalizations', each with a corresponding 'Personalize Option' button. At the bottom of the page, there is a 'Restore Defaults' button.

| Description | Personalize Option |
|-------------------------------|--------------------|
| General Options | Personalize Option |
| Regional Settings | Personalize Option |
| System & Application Messages | Personalize Option |
| Navigation Personalizations | Personalize Option |

Restore Defaults

Personalizations page

Personalize Option

Click to access the settings for the personalization category. For PeopleSoft Order Capture, relevant settings are in the General Options personalization category.

Restore Defaults

Click to restore default settings for all categories.

Changing the Default Entry Form Values

Access the Option Category: General Options page.

Option Category: General Options

Personalizations Find First 1-11 of 11 Last

| Personalization Option | Default Value | Override Value | |
|--------------------------------|-------------------------------|---------------------------|-------------------------|
| Product, Units, Quantity Order | Product/Quantity/Units | Product/Quantity/Units | Explain |
| Product Entry Option | Product ID First | Product ID First | Explain |
| Product Search Option | Try to find Exact Match First | Show All Possible Results | Explain |
| Product Separator | ; | | Explain |
| UOM/Qty Separator | , | | Explain |
| Order Capture Business Unit | | CRMCO APPLIANCES | Explain |
| Accessibility Features | Accessibility features off | Use standard layout mode | Explain |
| Excel 97 grid download | N | | Explain |
| Time page held in cache | 900 | | Explain |
| Multi Language Entry | No | No | Explain |
| Spell Check Dictionary | Use session language | US and UK English | Explain |

Option Category: General Options page

Personalizations

View the Default Value or Override the Default Value for any of the Personalization Options specified below:

Product, Units, Quantity Order

Choose a preferred sequence for using the Add Product(s) functionality on the main Entry Form. This allows you to change how you like to enter multiple products at one time.

Product Entry Option

Specify whether you want PeopleSoft Order Capture to search by *Product Description First* or *Product ID First*. Use this to improve performance by setting the value you normally use to search for products.

Product Search Option

Specify whether you want PeopleSoft Order Capture to search by finding an exact match first or to show all possible results. Use this to improve performance.

Product Separator

Identify a product line separator. The Add Product(s) field on the Entry Form has powerful processing functionality contained within it. It allows for the insertion of a special character to divide product lines. For example, you can define this as a colon or semicolon, and then during order entry, you could enter two separate sets of product information.

Note. Our system-delivered data specifies a semicolon.

UOM/Qty Separator (Unit of Measure/Order Quantity)

Identify a UOM/Qty separator. The Add Product(s) field on the Entry Form allows for the insertion of a special character to divide information for multiple product lines. For example, you could add two cases of product 10003 by entering *10003:2:cs*. This would then populate an order line with two cases of product 10003, and would save you time.

Note. Our system-delivered data specifies a colon.

Order Capture Business Unit

Specify your default business unit. If you regularly use a particular business unit, then this setting saves time during order and quote entry.

Configuring Search Criteria

PeopleSoft Order Capture searches are quite extensive and enable you to find existing orders or quotes in a variety of ways. You can use multiple search criteria to narrow your search for existing orders or quotes. Once you identify the criteria by which you most often search for orders and quotes, you can personalize the Order Capture search pages and save that personalization. The next time that your search page launches, you will work from the personalized search page that you have created.

Note. If there is more than one result for a search, the results can be distinguished by different criteria, including Customer, Date Created, Status, and Source.

Creating Orders or Quotes

This section discusses how to:

- Enter orders or quotes.
- Get product recommendations.
- Start a PeopleSoft Real-Time Advisor Dialog.
- View or modify line details.

Pages Used to Create Orders or Quotes

| Page Name | Object Name | Navigation | Usage |
|--|--------------------|--|---|
| Quote - Entry Form, Order - Entry Form | RO_FORM | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Orders and Quotes, Add Quote Orders and Quotes, Add Order | Create a new order or quote by entering order details and adding products to the order lines. |
| Submit Confirmation | RO_SUBMIT_CONFIRM | Click the Submit button on the Quote - Entry Form or Order - Entry Form page. | View a summary of the order or quote. |
| Order - Line Details, Quote - Line Details | RO_CAPTURELINE_DTL | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Click the Line Details tab on the Quote - Entry Form page. Click the Line Details tab on the Order - Entry Form page. Click the Product Description link or the Upsell link in the Order Details section on the Order - Entry Form page. Click the Product Description link or the Upsell link in the Quote Details section on the Quote - Entry Form page. | View upsell or cross-sell opportunities, and check product availability. You can edit line details such as unit of measure, order quantity, unit price, and promotion code. You can also allow partial shipment for this product. |
| Product Advisor List | RO_LISTDISP_SEC | Click the Get Recommendations link on the Quote - Entry Form or Order - Entry Form page. | Select a catalog from the list of catalogs available. You can then launch Advisor dialogs that are associated to the catalog. |
| PeopleSoft Advisor Dialog Start | RAD_ADVISOR_RUN | Select a catalog on the PeopleSoft Advisor List page. | Use a PeopleSoft Advisor dialog session to recommend a product, service, or solution based upon the buyer's responses to predefined questions. |
| Check Availability and Pricing | RO_FORM | Click the Availability tab on the Quote - Entry Form or Order - Entry Form page. Then click the Check Availability link. | Create partial shipments, add promotion codes, or view pricing details for order lines. |

Entering Orders or Quotes

Access the Order - Entry Form page.

Order

Order ID New
Customer Alliance Group
Contact Paula Smith

Order Status New Order
Customer Value Gold☆☆☆☆
Credit Rating 0

[Entry Form](#)
[Line Details](#)
[Holds](#)
[Notes](#)
[Related Actions](#)
[History](#)

Go To

Customer

Customer Alliance Group
Contact Paula Smith

[Search Again](#)

Order Details

***Business Unit** US001 - US001 NEW YORK OPERAT
Promotion

***Status** New
Priority Medium

[Show Details](#)

Order - Entry Form page (1 of 3)

Line Details

[Products](#)
[Pricing Adjustments](#)
[Availability](#)

| Line | Product Description | Product ID | *UOM | Order Quantity | List Price | Unit Price | | |
|------|-------------------------------|------------|------|----------------|------------|------------|--|--|
| 1 | Tekra-1000 Business Laptop | TEKRA-1000 | Each | 2.0000 | 3000.00 | 3000.00 | | |
| 2 | Men's Long Sleeve Bike Jersey | 10000 | Each | 1.0000 | 20.00 | 20.00 | | |

Enter Product ID or Description - Power Add using Product,Quantity,Units;Product,Quantity,Units format

Add Product(s)

[Search or Browse Catalog](#)
[Get Recommendations](#)

[Get Product Promotions](#)

Shipping Summary



Customer Alliance Group
Address 14410 Union Ave San Jose, CA
Shipping Method


Contact Paula Smith

[Advanced Options](#)


Order - Entry Form page (2 of 3)

Billing Summary

Customer Alliance Group  **Contact** Paula Smith 







Address 14410 Union Ave San Jose, CA  **PD Number** ☐ **PD Received**

☒ **Invoice** **Payment Terms**

☐ **Credit Card** ***Credit Card** *No Cards Defined*  [Edit](#)

Totals

| Description | Amount | Currency |
|-------------------------------|-----------------|------------|
| One Time Charges | 6,020.00 | USD |
| Discount | 0.00 | USD |
| Surcharge | 0.00 | USD |
| Total One Time Charges | 6,020.00 | USD |

 [Validate](#)  [Convert To Bulk](#)  [Add](#)  [Search](#)  [Cancel](#)  [360-Degree View](#) [Top of Page](#)

Order - Entry Form page (3 of 3)

Credit Rating

Display-only field that is associated with the customer and defaults from the customer data model.

Customer

PeopleSoft Order Capture initially displays the Customer, First Name, and Last Name fields. After you enter or select a customer, PeopleSoft Order Capture displays the Customer and Contact fields.

Customer

- Enter the name of the customer.
- Click to access the Company - Summary page to view information about the customer. PeopleSoft Order Capture opens a new window to access the Customer Data Model.

PeopleSoft Order Capture enables you to create a new customer directly from the Entry Form page using the Quick Create functionality. To create a new customer:

1. Enter a customer name.
2. Click Search to access the Search For Sold To Customer page.
3. From the Select Action drop down list, select one of the following:
 - *Create Company*
 - *Create Company With Contact*
 - *Create Company With Site*
 - *Create Consumer*
 - *Create Consumer With Contact*
4. Click Go to access the page that you selected.
5. Populate all fields associated with a customer from one central Quick Create page.

- 6. Click Save to save the information for the new customer.
You have now created a new customer.

See *PeopleSoft Enterprise CRM 8.9 Business Object Management PeopleBook*, “Working with Predefined Business Object Search and Quick Create Data”.

Contact

The primary Sold To contact defaults here. You can change the contact to any valid Sold To contact associated with this customer for this transaction by selecting from the prompt.

Note. If the customer is a company, a Sold To contact is required. A consumer does not require a Sold To contact. Orders or quotes that do not have a contact when one is required are automatically placed on Hold.



Click the Search for Contact button to access the Search For Contact Of [company] page to view, select, or add contacts for the company.



Click the Show Details button to access the Partners Contact page to view, modify, or add contacts.

Search Again

Click to access the Search For Sold To Customer page to search for a different customer.

Order Details

This section appears on the Order - Entry Form page and is similar to the Quote Details section on the Quote - Entry Form page.

PeopleSoft Order Capture displays these page elements for orders and quotes:

Business Unit

Select a business unit to use for this order or quote.

Status

Displays the status of the order or quote.

Promotion

Select a code that uniquely identifies the promotional offer, if applicable. Products assigned to this promotion will then display a promotional price, rather than their regular price.

Note. This field involves integration to PeopleSoft Marketing, which relies upon the pricing engine to establish promotional pricing.

See *PeopleSoft Enterprise CRM 8.9 Marketing Applications PeopleBook*, “Creating Campaigns and Activities”.

See *PeopleSoft Enterprise Pricer 8.9 PeopleBook*.

Priority

Priorities appear by default from the Order Capture Business Unit. You can change the priority for the order or quote to *Urgent*, *High*, *Medium*, or *Low*.

Note. There is no extra processing logic associated with priorities. Priorities may be changed from the Setup Workbench.

Show Details or Hide Details

Click to view or hide additional details about the order.

| | |
|--------------------|--|
| Description | Describe the order. |
| Order Date | This date does not have to be today's date, but can be a past, present, or future date. For example, you may want to postdate the order because it was faxed prior to today's date, or you may want to create an advance order. All of these date creation options are available here. |
| Currency | Select the currency to use for the order or quote. This defaults based on the business unit. |
| Source | Identify the source of the order or quote as either <i>CTI</i> , <i>Fax</i> , <i>Phone</i> , <i>Self Service</i> , or <i>SCM</i> . |

Note. Source types may be changed from the Setup Workbench.

Quote Details

This section appears on the Quote - Entry Form page and is similar to the Order Details section on the Order - Entry Form page. Page elements that appear in both the Quote Details and Order Details sections are described above in the Order Details section of this PeopleBook.

PeopleSoft Order Capture displays these additional page elements for quotes:

| | |
|---------------------------|---|
| Quote Date | This date does not have to be today's date, but can be a past, present, or future date. For example, you may want to postdate the quote because it was faxed prior to today's date, or you may want to create an advance quote. All of these date creation options are available here. |
| Due Date | Enter the date due for the quote. Due Date can be used if the customer has requested pricing information by a certain date, or if the quote is part of a request for quote (RFQ) that is due by a certain time. A default date may populate this field if specified during business unit setup. |
| Expire Date | Enter the expiration date for the quote. A default date may populate this field if specified during business unit setup. |
| Revision | Displays the total number of times the quote has been revised. |
| Confidence Level % | PeopleSoft Order Capture provides this field so that PeopleSoft Sales can populate its relevant data in the quote. The value amount is transferred from an opportunity if populated on the opportunity. |

Line Details: Products Tab

You can add, remove products, access a catalog, or launch PeopleSoft Advisor to identify a product that suits your customer's specifications. When you create a new quote or order, PeopleSoft Order Capture displays the Add Products, Search or Browse Catalog, and Get Recommendations field elements, which we discuss in this section. After you enter a product, PeopleSoft Order Capture displays additional fields that also appear on the Order - Line Details page, which we discuss in the Viewing or Modifying Line Details section of this PeopleBook.

See [Chapter 8, "Managing Orders and Quotes," Viewing or Modifying Line Details, page 133.](#)

| | |
|-----------------------|--|
| Add Product(s) | Enter the Product ID or a description to search for a product, service, or product package. The system retrieves all the products that you have requested and enters each product on a new line. You can enter more than one product at a time by separating the product IDs or descriptions with semicolons. Be sure to |
|-----------------------|--|

leave no spaces between the IDs or descriptions. This field contains processing logic so that you do not need to enter exact information. Partial matches retrieve the Product Search Results Page, which lists all of the closest matches.

Note. This field is also equipped with Personalization capability. A CSR's preferences for product selection can be configured so that a variety of input techniques can be used.

Search Catalog

Click to view catalogs that are associated with this business unit. You can make selections from available catalogs and compare products or services. You can then add product selections directly to the order form.

Get Recommendations

Click to access PeopleSoft Advisor. PeopleSoft Advisor presents you with a question and answer dialog session, where your answers to specific questions will lead to a list of recommendations.

Note. PeopleSoft Advisor is associated to a data model, so that it can retrieve products. In this case the PeopleSoft CRM product data model, which includes automatic filtering based on the catalog definitions, is the data model that PeopleSoft Advisor uses.

After you enter or select a product, PeopleSoft Order Capture may display the following buttons:



Click the Upsell button to view an upsell or cross-sell opportunity. The upsell alert appears on the order line if there is an upsell or cross-sell opportunity associated with the product.



Configure Product

Click to launch the product PeopleSoft Sales Configurator. When the product is configured, the background button color becomes light blue.

See *PeopleSoft Enterprise CRM Advanced Configurator 8.9 PeopleBook*.



Configure Package

Click to configure and view the components of a dynamic package. The background color changes to light blue after the product has been lightly configured.

Note. Dynamic packages are supported by the CRM Product Data Model, and exist independently of the PeopleSoft Configurator.



Attributes

Click to add configurable product attributes to an order or quote line. Always specify the attribute value for products with required attributes.

See *PeopleSoft Enterprise CRM 8.9 Product and Item Management PeopleBook*, "Setting Up Products," Defining Product Attributes.



Add Note

Click to access the Notes and Attachments page. The cursor is automatically placed on the Summary line so that you can write your note immediately. When a note is attached, the button becomes dotted.



Get Product Promotions

Select to access the Products Promotions page to view the promotions that are defined in Marketing for the customer.

Line Details: Pricing Adjustments

Select the Pricing Adjustments tab to enter discounts or surcharges for the product.

| | |
|-------------------------|--|
| Discount | A calculated amount of list price minus the unit price is calculated here for quick reference. |
| Promotion Code | Select a Promotion Code for the line. If you add a product to the order line using the Promotion Code, the associated promotion code populates this field. <hr/> Note. This field differs from the field on the Header only in that you can specify a product promotion for a specific line. <hr/> |
| Adjustment | Enter the amount of the adjustment you want to apply to this order line. You can choose to enter either a percentage discount or an actual currency discount. Select <i>Percent</i> or <i>Amount</i> in the next field to decide whether the number you enter here will be a percentage of the price, or a static currency adjustment. |
| Percent/Amount | Identifies the adjustment field as an exact <i>Amount</i> or a <i>Percentage</i> . |
| Adjustment Type | Select <i>Discount</i> or <i>Surcharge</i> . |
| Apply Adjustment | Click to apply the discount or surcharge to the order line. The system updates the Total Price and Discount fields. |
| More... | Click to access the Price Adjustments page to view or delete manual adjustments. |

See [Chapter 8, “Managing Orders and Quotes,” Viewing or Modifying Line Details, page 133.](#)

Line Details: Availability Tab

Select the Product Availability tab to return a numerical count of the remaining number of products in stock for those products that you have selected.

| | |
|---------------------|---|
| Availability | Click the link to conduct a real-time availability check. |
| Partials | Select to allow partial shipment of the order line. |

Shipping Summary

Use this section to enter shipping information.

See [Chapter 8, “Managing Orders and Quotes,” Entering Shipping, Payment, and Billing Information, page 140.](#)

Billing Summary

Use this section to manage payment information.

See [Chapter 8, “Managing Orders and Quotes,” Entering Shipping, Payment, and Billing Information, page 140.](#)

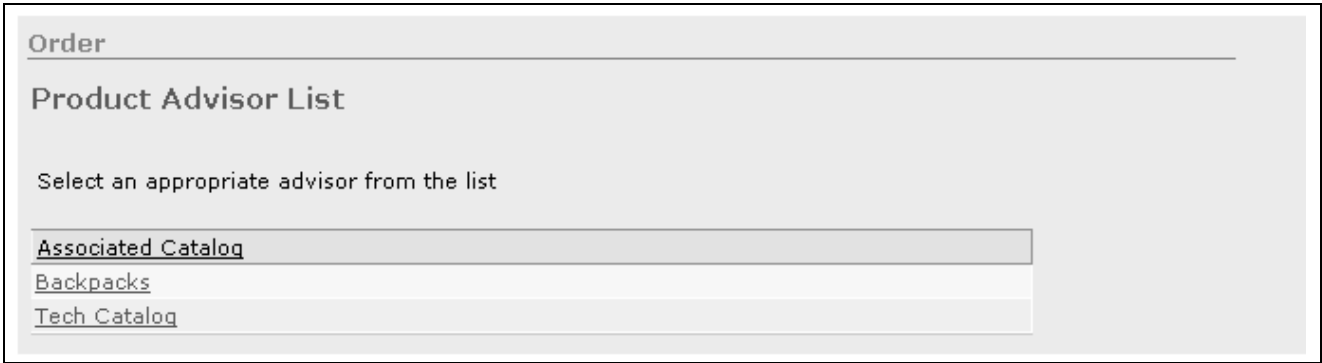
Totals

| | |
|-------------------------|---|
| One Time Charges | As opposed to recurring charges, these charges indicate charges that occur only once. |
|-------------------------|---|

| | |
|--------------------------|---|
| Recurring Charges | As opposed to one-time charges, these charges indicate charges that occur with varying frequency, such as weekly, monthly, or annually. |
| Discount | Discounts identified on the Pricing Adjustments tab are applied. |
| Taxes and VAT | <p>PeopleSoft Order Capture integrates with Taxware, Vertex, and WorldTax to calculate VAT and other taxes. You must have already defined your tax integration options for Order Capture on the Business Unit definition page and tax provider page.</p> <hr/> <p>Note. To display VAT, you must define World Tax as your Tax Vendor when you created your PeopleSoft Order Capture business unit. You can test all of your third party integrations on the business unit definition page.</p> <hr/> |
| Update Total | Click to manually invoke the pricing engine and any third party calculations such as VAT, taxes, and shipping, and update the total amount charged to this order or quote. This is then reflected in Total One Time Charges. |

Getting Product Recommendations

Access the Product Advisor List page.



Product Advisor List page

You can leverage PeopleSoft Real-Time Advisor to engage the buyer in question and return recommendations. When you click the Get Recommendations link, it launches a question and answer dialog session. When you first click the Get Recommendations link, the system first displays the Product Advisor List page that lists catalogs with a Real-Time Advisor Dialog associated with it. Select a catalog and PeopleSoft Order Capture displays the first page in the dialog.

Starting a PeopleSoft Real-Time Advisor Dialog

Access the PeopleSoft Real-Time Advisor Intro page.

Intro

GBI Telkom offers a number of cellular service plans. This Advisor script will recommend plans that might serve your individual needs. As you answer more questions, the recommendations will more closely map to your needs.

You can view the current recommendations at any point by clicking the Recommend button.

Some questions may include a blue circle with a lowercase 'i' in the middle. Click this image for more information about that question.

We offer several service plan types. Select the type(s) that interest you most.

☐ Prepaid

☐ Family

☒ National

☐ Local

Next Recommend Exit

PeopleSoft Real-Time Advisor Intro page

The dialog is a series of pages that contain questions and answers. Answers do not provide a static response from PeopleSoft Real-Time Advisor. Instead, the buyers responses determine the user segment that they are placed in, as well as the predefined weightings that are applied. If you choose to walk the buyer through the dialog, a recommendation for a product, service, or solution will be presented at the end of the dialog. You can also force a recommendation by clicking the Recommend button.

Click Exit to return to the calling application, which in this case is PeopleSoft Order Capture.

Note. Displaying the debug information is an optional feature of the Real-Time Advisor Dialog. To turn the debug information off, refer to the Advisor Workbench documentation in the PeopleSoft Advisor PeopleBook.

See Also

PeopleSoft Enterprise CRM Real-Time Advisor 8.9 PeopleBook, “Setting Up PeopleSoft Real-Time Advisor Dialogs”

PeopleSoft Enterprise CRM Real-Time Advisor 8.9 PeopleBook, “Defining Display Templates”

Viewing or Modifying Line Details

Access the Order - Line Details page.

Order

Submit Save Validate Convert To Bulk Add Search Cancel 360 360-Degree View Personalize

Order ID New
Customer Alliance Group
Contact Paula Smith

Order Status New Order
Customer Value Gold☆☆☆☆
Credit Rating 0

Entry Form **Line Details** Holds Notes Related Actions History

Go To Select One...

Line Details Find View All First 1 of 2 Last

| | | | |
|--|---|------------------------------|-------|
| Product Men's Long Sleeve Bike Jersey | Line 1 | Total Price | 20.00 |
| Product ID 10000 | Add Note | Total Recurring Price | 0.00 |
| *Unit of Measure Each | | List Price | 20.00 |
| Order Qty 1.0000 | Availability Check Failed | Discount Taken | 0.00 |
| Unit Price 20.00 | View Adjustments | Discount Percentage | 0.00 |
| Promotion Code | | Minimum Price | 0.00 |
| Shipment Single Shipment | | | |

Order - Line Details page (1 of 2)

Manual Price Adjustments

Adjustment **Pct/Amt** Percent **Adjustment Type** Discount

Replace/Cascade Replace Manual Adjustments **Adjustment Target** Apply to this order line

[Apply Adjustment](#)

Cross/Up Sell Opportunities

| | Product Description | Product ID | Relationship Description |
|--|--------------------------------|------------|--------------------------|
| | Long Sleeve T-Shirt, Men's | 10002 | Agreements |
| | Long Sleeve T-Shirt, Men's | 10002 | Alternates |
| | Long Sleeve T-Shirt, Men's | 10002 | Up-Sells |
| | Women's Long Sleeve Bike Shirt | 10003 | Agreements |
| | Long Sleeve T-Shirt, Women's | 10004 | Alternates |
| | Supplex Shorts, Men's | 10006 | Cross-Sells |
| | Sidepocket Short's, Women's | 10007 | Cross-Sells |

Configuration and Attributes

Men's Long Sleeve Bike Jersey 1@ 20.00/EA

Submit Save Validate Convert To Bulk Add Search Cancel 360 360-Degree View Top of Page

Order - Line Details page (2 of 2)

Line Details

The CSR can override the unit price here, and can also change the unit of measure, check availability and change the order quantity. Finally, a new promotion code can be added.

Check Availability

Click to return an exact numerical count of the remaining number of products in stock.

Note. PeopleSoft Order Capture uses the SCM_PROD_AVAIL enterprise integration point (EIP) to make a call to PeopleSoft Supply Chain Management to determine product availability. PeopleSoft Supply Chain Management returns an exact numerical count of available products. If you are using a third party product for order fulfillment, you can use this integration point. It provides the ability to transform the EIP message to the appropriate format using the PeopleTools Integration broker. An “Availability Not Available,” message next to the *Order Qty* field indicates an inactive integration to a third party inventory system.

View Adjustments Click on this link to view any price adjustments that have been applied to the order line.

Shipment Select *Single Shipment* to allow or not allow partial shipments.
Select *Ship as Items Available* to allow partial shipments.

Manual Price Adjustments

Adjustment Enter the amount of the adjustment you want to apply to this order line. You can choose to enter either a percentage discount or an actual currency discount. Select *Percent* or *Amount* in the next field to decide whether the number you enter here will be a percentage of the price, or a static currency adjustment.

Pct/Amt (percent/amount) Identifies the adjustment field as an exact *Amount* or a *Percentage*.

Adjustment Type Select *Discount* or *Surcharge*.

Replace/Cascade *Cascade Manual Adjustment* adds this price adjustment to all existing adjustments, whereas *Replace Manual Adjustments* replaces any manual adjustments with the current discount being applied.

Adjustment Target You can target the discount for the current line that you are looking at, in which case you select *Apply to this order line*, or you can apply the discount to the whole order, by choosing *Apply to entire order*.

Apply Adjustment Click to apply the discount or surcharge to the order line. The system updates the Total Price and Discount fields.

Configuration & Attributes

This grid provides a detailed list of the options chosen upon configuring a product on this order. Configuration details appear in a list under the Configurator button and product name. Other elements can also appear based on previously established setup parameters.

If a product is defined in the product data model as requiring configurable attributes, an icon appears at the point of order entry. This navigates the user through attribute capture. This icon also appears on this page along with the product name. You can also view the attribute and attribute values captured for the order.

Note. You can control the level of detail that displays here. To control display options, you can navigate to Schemas-Display options in the Configurator setup.

See Also

PeopleSoft Enterprise CRM Advanced Configurator 8.9 PeopleBook

Creating Service Agreements

Access the Order - Line Details page.

Order

Order ID New
Customer Apex Systems
Contact Mary Lewis

Order Status New Order
Customer Value Gold☆☆☆☆
Credit Rating 0

Go To

Line Details

Find |
First Last

| | | | | | |
|------------------------|--|---|---|------------------------------|---------|
| Product | AGRFORIUT01 | Line | 2 | Total Price | 232.00 |
| Product ID | AGRFORIUT01 | <input type="button" value="Add Note"/> | | Total Recurring Price | 0.00 |
| Unit of Measure | Each | | | List Price | 232.00 |
| Order Qty | 1.0000 | | | Discount Taken | 0.00 |
| Unit Price | <input type="text" value="232.00"/> | <input type="button" value="View Adjustments"/> | | Discount Percentage | 0.00 |
| Promotion Code | <input type="text"/> | | | Minimum Price | 0.00 |
| Agreement Code | NEXT | | | Duration | 1 Years |
| Shipment | <input type="text" value="Single Shipment"/> | | | | |
| Start Date | <input type="text" value="06/04/2004"/> | End Date | <input type="text" value="06/03/2005"/> | | |

Order - Line Details page (1 of 2)

Select Covered Products

| <u>Include in Agreement</u> | <u>Line Number</u> | <u>Product Description</u> | <u>Product ID</u> | <u>Unit of Measure</u> | <u>Quantity</u> | <u>Installed Product</u> |
|-------------------------------------|--------------------|--------------------------------|-------------------|------------------------|-----------------|--------------------------|
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | 1 | Desktop CPU 450Mhz, 128 Mb RAM | IUT-01 | Each | 1.0000 | N |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | 3 | Desktop CPU 450Mhz, 128 Mb RAM | IUT-01 | Each | 1.0000 | N |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | 4 | Desktop CPU 450Mhz, 128 Mb RAM | IUT-01 | Each | 1.0000 | N |

Add Additional Products To Agreement

Manual Price Adjustments

| | | | | | |
|---|---|--------------------------|---|------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| Adjustment | <input type="text"/> | Pct/Amt | <input type="text" value="Percent"/> | Adjustment Type | <input type="text" value="Discount"/> |
| Replace/Cascade | <input type="text" value="Replace Manual Adjustments"/> | Adjustment Target | <input type="text" value="Apply to this order line"/> | | |
| <input type="button" value="Apply Adjustment"/> | | | | | |

Configuration and Attributes

Order - Line Details page (2 of 2)

Service agreements, such as installation services, maintenance services, and support services provide an opportunity for increased profits, and PeopleSoft Order Capture enables you to sell both products and services together.

Using a Service Agreement product type, PeopleSoft Order Capture enables you to purchase agreement products. Additionally, a product relationship type of Agreements enables you to upsell agreement products with standard products.

Select Covered Products

| | |
|--|--|
| Include in Agreement | <p>Select to associate multiple ordered products to one service agreement.</p> <p>If multiple products on the order are eligible for coverage by the same service agreement product, based on the agreement template definition, PeopleSoft Order Capture displays them in the Select Covered Products grid. If selected, Order Capture includes them in the coverage and cost of the purchased agreement.</p> |
| Include Customer's Installed Products | <p>Click to access the Customer's Installed Products page to select installed products to provide coverage for on the order. If the customer has any installed products eligible for coverage by the agreement product, PeopleSoft Order Capture displays them in the Selected Covered Products grid.</p> |
| Create Installed Product | <p>Click to access the Installed Product page to create an installed product to add to the Select Covered Products grid.</p> <p>By default, when purchasing an agreement product through order capture, a new agreement will be created. This is indicated by the value of "NEXT" defaulted into the Agreement Code field. If instead, you would like to provide coverage against an existing agreement for this customer, one may be selected from the order line details page, by choosing the selection icon on the Agreement Code field.</p> |

Creating Configurations

The process for ordering configured products using PeopleSoft Order Capture is similar to the process for ordering standard products, with one exception. After you enter the order line on the Entry Form page, you must configure the product by clicking the Configure Product or Reconfigure Product link (or button) and selecting the desired options for that configured product on the Configuration page.

This section discusses how to:

- Configure a product using PeopleSoft Configurator.
- Configure a dynamic package.

Pages Used to Create Configurations

| Page Name | Object Name | Navigation | Usage |
|-------------------|------------------|--|--|
| Configure Product | CFG_HTML_SEC | Orders and Quotes, Add Order (or Add Quote) After adding a configured product, click the Configure Product button next to the order quantity. | Fully configure the product using PeopleSoft Configurator. |
| Dynamic Package | CP_DYNAMIC_PANEL | Orders and Quotes, Add Order (or Add Quote) Click the Dynamic Package button next to the order quantity for a product. | Create a dynamic package from within PeopleSoft Order Capture. |

Configuring a Product Using PeopleSoft Configurator

Access a configuration session by clicking the Configure Product button for a configurable product, service, or solution.

The screenshot displays the 'Configure Product' page for a refrigerator. At the top right, the 'List Price' is \$8,240.00. Below this are four buttons: 'Update', 'Reset', 'Cancel Changes', and 'Return to Order'. The configuration options are organized into several sections:

- *What will this freezer be used for?**: Radio buttons for 'Food Stuffs' (selected), 'Ice Blocks' (deselected), and 'Medical Supplies' (deselected).
- *Refrigerator Type**: Radio buttons for 'Cooler (max. +35F)' (selected) and 'Freezer (max. -10F)' (deselected).
- *Refrigerator Dimensions**: Three dropdown menus for 'Height', 'Width', and 'Depth', each with the text 'Specify a height ...', 'Specify a width ...', and 'Specify a depth ...' respectively.
- Openings per Hour**: A text input field containing the value '2'.
- *Cooling Unit**: Radio buttons for 'Cooler w/ Hermetic Compressor' (deselected, priced at +\$4,500.00) and 'Cooler w/ Semi-Hermetic Compressor' (selected).
- *Wall Color**: Four color swatches for selection.

Configure Product page (1 of 2)

The screenshot displays a configuration interface for a product, organized into several sections:

- *Floor Surface:** Includes radio buttons for Concrete Wearing Surface, Epoxy Flooring Surface, Prefabricated Insulated Floor Panels (selected), and Tile and Grout Flooring.
- *Thermostat:** Features an image of a thermostat and a digital display showing 18.8 with up/down arrows and a 'P' icon.
- Interior Ramp:** Includes a radio button for None (selected) and two options for interior floor ramps (30 inches for +\$175.00 and 36 inches for +\$200.00).
- Shelves:** A table listing four freezer shelf options with their dimensions and prices.

| | | |
|---|-------------------------------------|----------|
| 0 | Freezer Shelf - 12" deep x 24" long | \$112.50 |
| 0 | Freezer Shelf - 12" deep x 48" long | \$225.00 |
| 0 | Freezer Shelf - 24" deep x 24" long | \$337.50 |
| 0 | Freezer Shelf - 12" deep x 24" long | \$500.00 |
- Front Door:** A dropdown menu currently set to '> None'.
- Rear Door:** A dropdown menu currently set to '> None'.
- Left Door:** A dropdown menu currently set to '> None'.
- Right Door:** A dropdown menu currently set to '> None'.

At the bottom, there are four buttons: Update, Reset, Cancel Changes, and Return to Order. The total List Price is displayed as \$8,240.00.

Configure Product page (2 of 2)

Cancel Changes

Click this button to cancel this configuration session and return to the order Entry Form in PeopleSoft Order Capture.

Return to Order

Click this button to submit this configuration session and return to the Entry Form in PeopleSoft Order Capture.

Note. The configuration display pages can vary widely depending upon how these pages were created.

See Also

PeopleSoft Enterprise CRM Advanced Configurator 8.9 PeopleBook

Configuring a Dynamic Package

Access Dynamic Package by clicking the Configure Package button next to the order quantity.

| PRODUCT | QUANTITY | PRICE |
|---|-------------------------------------|-------------|
| Camping Package <small>*Select from 3 to 6 Components.</small> | 1 Each | 1000.00 USD |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 4 Season Convertible Tent | 1 Each | |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Ice Chest, 20 Qt. <small>*Enter a Quantity from 1 to 2.</small> | <input type="text" value="1"/> Each | |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Air Bed with Pump | 1 Each | |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Adult Day Pack <small>*Enter a Quantity from 0 to 1.</small> | <input type="text" value="1"/> Each | |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Culinary Package | 1 Each | |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Single Outdoor Cooker | 1 Each | |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> BackPacker Cook Set, 2 Person | 1 Each | |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Aluminum Pots/Pans | 1 Each | |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Titanium Fork/Spoon Set | 1 Each | |

Dynamic Package page

Entering Shipping, Payment, and Billing Information

To complete the order or quote, you need to identify shipping and payment information.

This section discusses how to:

- Enter shipping information.
- Manage billing information.

Pages Used to Enter Shipping, Payment, and Billing Information

| Page Name | Object Name | Navigation | Usage |
|--|-------------------|--|--|
| Order - Entry Form (Advanced Shipping grid), Quote - Entry Form (Advanced Shipping grid) | RO_FORM | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Orders and Quotes, Add Order Click the Advanced Option link in the Advanced Shipping grid. Orders and Quotes, Add Quote Click the Advanced Option link in the Advanced Shipping grid. | Enter shipping information. |
| Order - Entry Form (Billing Summary grid), Quote - Entry Form (Billing Summary grid) | RO_FORM | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Orders and Quotes, Add Order Orders and Quotes, Add Quote | Manage payment information and add a new billing account, if applicable. |
| Order - [mode] Credit Card | RO_CREDITCARD_SEC | Click the Edit link on the Order - Entry Form page in the Billing Summary section. | Add or edit credit card information for billing purposes. |

Entering Shipping Information

Access the Order - Entry Form page: Advanced Shipping grid.

Advanced Shipping

Customer Alliance Group

Address 14410 Union Ave San Jose, CA

Shipping Method

Description

☒ Tax Exempt

Exemption Certificate

Contact Paula Smith

Arrival Date

Site

Contact *No Contact Selected*

Address *No Address Selected*

Lines for this Destination

| Select | Line | Product Description | Product ID | Unit of Measure | Order Quantity | Site Required |
|-------------------------------------|------|-------------------------------|------------|-----------------|----------------|---------------|
| <input type="checkbox"/> | 1 | Men's Long Sleeve Bike Jersey | 10000 | Each | 1.0000 | N |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | 2 | Men's Long Sleeve Bike Jersey | 10000 | Each | 1.0000 | N |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | 3 | Graphics Software | USA-02 | Each | 1.0000 | Y |

Move to Another Shipment

Basic Options

Order - Entry Form page: Advanced Shipping grid

Customer

Displays the customer who the order will be shipped to. Click to access the Company page in the Customer Data Model.



Click the Lookup Customer button to select a different ship to customer.

Contact

Select a shipping contact for the customer.

Note. Select *Add/Select More Contacts* to access the Address Book - Select Contact page to select or add a contact. When adding a new contact, you can indicate the new contact as a one-time contact by checking the "One Use Only (not a permanent address or contact)" on the Address Book - Create New Address page.

Address

Select a shipping address for the customer.

Note. Select *Add/Select More Addresses* or click the View Addresses button to access the Address Book - Select Address page to select or add a shipping address. When adding a new address, you can indicate the new address as a one-time address by checking the "One Use Only (not a permanent address or contact)" on the Address Book - Create New Address page.

Shipping Method

Select a carrier service. Applicable carriers that are to be used by the system are set up in the CARRIER_TBL.

See [Chapter 3, "Setting Up PeopleSoft Order Capture," Setting Up Freight Integration, page 62.](#)

Arrival Date

Select the requested arrival date for the product(s) being shipped.

Description

Enter any additional information about the shipment.

Tax Exempt

Select if the shipment is exempt from taxes. If selected, PeopleSoft Order Capture displays the Exemption Certificate field where you select a tax exemption certificate.



Click the Select Site button to select the site and address or to add a site address. After you select a site, PeopleSoft Order Capture displays the site name, which you can then click on to access the Site page in the Customer Data Model.

Note. Select Site appears only when a product requires one, as defined in the product data model or if the *No Site Hold* option is active.

Contact

Select a site contact for the customer.

Note. Select *Add/Select More Contacts* to access the Address Book - Select Contact page to select or add a contact.

Contact displays only when a product requires one, as defined in the product data model or if the *No Site Hold* option is active.

Address

The primary address associated with the site appears here.

Note. Address displays only when a product requires one, as defined in the product data model or if the *No Site Hold* option is active.

See *PeopleSoft Enterprise CRM 8.9 Product and Item Management PeopleBook*, “Tracking Installed Products,” How Installed Products Are Created and Updated.

Lines for this Destination

This section shows all products tied to the shipment. You can split a shipment so that certain lines are:

- Shipped to a different address.
- Shipped using a different shipping method.
- Assigned to a different site.
- Assigned a different requested date.

Note. You cannot split the quantity on a single line into multiple shipments. You must create two lines with the appropriate quantity so that you can specify a unique shipping address, shipping method, and date for each shipment.

| | |
|--|--|
| Split | Select a line to split the order into multiple shipment. |
| Move to Another Shipment | After you select a line, click to split a line to create multiple shipments. |
| Combine with Previous Shipment | Click to combine the shipment with the previous shipment. This button appears after you split a shipment |
| Basic Options or Advanced Options | Click to view or hide details about the shipment. |

Managing Billing Information

Access the Order - Entry Form page: Billing Summary grid.

Billing Summary

Customer Alliance Group

Address 14410 Union Ave San Jose, C

PO Number

Contact Paula Smith

☐ PO Received

Invoice


Payment Terms

Credit Card

*Credit Card *No Cards Defined*

Edit

Order - Entry Form page: Billing Summary grid

| | |
|---|---|
| Customer | Displays the customer who the order will be billed to. Click to access the Company page in the Customer Data Model. |
|  | Click the Lookup Customer button to select a different bill to customer. |
| Contact | Select a billing contact for the customer. |

| | |
|---|--|
| | <hr/> <p>Note. Select <i>Add/Select More Contacts</i> to access the Address Book - Select Contact page to select or add a contact. When adding a new contact, you can indicate the new contact as a one-time contact by checking the "One Use Only (not a permanent address or contact)" on the Address Book - Create New Address page.</p> <hr/> |
| Address | <p>Select a billing address for the customer.</p> <hr/> <p>Note. Select <i>Add/Select More Addresses</i> or click the View Addresses button to access the Address Book - Select Address page to select or add a billing address. When adding a new address, you can indicate the new address as a one-time address by checking the "One Use Only (not a permanent address or contact)" on the Address Book - Create New Address page.</p> <hr/> |
| PO Number | <p>Enter the Purchase Order number, if one exists for the customer.</p> |
| PO Received | <p>Select this check box if a Purchase Order has been received.</p> <hr/> <p>Note. This functionality is designed solely for auditing purposes. There is no attached business logic.</p> <hr/> |
| Invoice | <p>Select to issue an invoice to the customer.</p> |
| Payment Terms | <p>Select terms of payment if <i>Invoice</i> is selected as the payment method.</p> |
| Credit Card (option) | <p>Select this option to charge the customer using a credit card.</p> <p>Select a credit card if <i>Credit Card</i> is the payment method.</p> |
| Credit Card (drop down list) | <p>Select an existing credit card from the drop down list or add a new credit card.</p> <hr/> <p>Note. The credit card is attached to the bill to contact or consumer in the customer data model.</p> <hr/> |
| Edit | <p>Click to access the Order - [mode] Credit Card page to add or edit credit card information for the customer.</p> <hr/> <p>Note. When you add or edit credit card information, you have the option to save the information in the Customer Data Model or not.</p> <hr/> |
| Billing Account | |
| <p>The Billing Account section appears if the Use Accounts flag on the PeopleSoft Order Capture Business Unit is selected. Accounts are mainly used for recurring charges and are utilized extensively for communications.</p> <p>You can use an existing account for the order entry, or create a new one, if required for order processing.</p> | |
| Existing Account | <p>Select to refer this Order Capture payment to an existing service account.</p> |
| Account Number | <p>Enter an existing service account number.</p> |
| New Account | <p>Select to create a new service account, then select the type of account, either <i>individual</i>, <i>sponsored</i> or <i>subordinate</i>.</p> |
| Individual Account | <p>Select to create a new account that is unrelated to other accounts.</p> |

| | |
|---|--|
| Invoice | Select <i>invoice</i> as the payment method. |
| New Credit Card | Select an existing credit card or add a new credit card. |
| <hr/> | |
| Note. The credit card is attached to the bill to contact or consumer in the customer data model. | |
| <hr/> | |
| Sponsored Account | Select if there is a parent account that assumes billing responsibility for this new account. Choose the parent account ID in <i>Sponsoring Acct No.</i> |
| Subordinate Account | Select if there is a parent account that assumes billing responsibility for this new account. Choose the parent account ID in <i>Parent Account No.</i> |

Viewing Price Adjustments

PeopleSoft Order Capture enables you to make pricing adjustments either to the order line or to the entire order.

This section discusses how to view price adjustment details.

Page Used to View Price Adjustments

| Page Name | Object Name | Navigation | Usage |
|-------------------|--------------------|--|---|
| Price Adjustments | RO_CAPTURELINE_ADJ | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Orders and Quotes, Add Order Click the Line Details tab, then click on the View Adjustments link. | View details of the price changes that you made. You can view the pricing details for Line Adjustments, Summed and Manual Adjustments, and Order Adjustments. |

Viewing Price Adjustment Details

Access the Price Adjustments page.

Price Adjustments

Product ID USA-02 **List Price** 250.00

Unit of Measure Each

Line Adjustments

Rule **Formula** **Pricing Keys**

| Price Rule | Description | Price Action Type | Adjustment Method | Adjustment | Adjustment Type | Price |
|------------|-------------|-------------------|-------------------|------------|-----------------|-------|
| | | | | | | |

Summed and Manual Adjustments

| Description | Adjustment | Type | Price |
|-------------------|------------|---------|--------|
| Manual Adjustment | -10.0000 | Percent | 225.00 |

Order Adjustments

Rule **Formula** **Pricing Keys**

| Price Rule | Description | Price Action Type | Adjustment | Adjustment Type |
|------------|-------------|-------------------|------------|-----------------|
| | | | | |

OK Cancel

Price Adjustments page

Line Adjustments - Rule Tab

This grid displays all of the adjustments applied by the system, including the price rules that are being applied to the lines.

Line Adjustments - Formula Tab

Information on this tab provides more detail about the rules that are being applied.

Line Adjustments - Pricing Keys Tab

Information on this tab lists the identifiers which indicate where the Price Rule condition was met.

Summed and Manual Adjustments

This grid displays the summed and manual adjustments that were applied to the lines.

Order Adjustments

This grid displays the price adjustments that have been applied for the total order.

Adding and Viewing Notes and Attachments

You can add notes and attachments to either an order or a quote, or to an order or quote line.

This section discusses how to add or view notes and attachments.

See Also

PeopleSoft Enterprise CRM 8.9 Application Fundamentals PeopleBook, “Working with Notes and Attachments”

Pages Used to Add or View Notes and Attachments

| Page Name | Object Name | Navigation | Usage |
|------------------------------|-------------|--|--|
| Order - Notes, Quote - Notes | RO_NOTE | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Orders and Quotes, Add Order, Notes Orders and Quotes, Add Quote, Notes | Add or review notes or attachments for the order or quote. |

Adding or Viewing Notes or Attachments

Access the Order - Notes page.

Order

Submit Save Validate Convert To Bulk Add Search Cancel 360 360-Degree View Personalize

Order ID New
Customer Alliance Group
Contact Paula Smith

Order Status New Order
Customer Value Gold☆☆☆☆
Credit Rating 0

Entry Form Line Details Holds **Notes** Related Actions History

Go To Select One...

Notes Summary

| Select | Subject and Details | Attachment(s) | Related Line | Visibility | Added By | Date Added | |
|--------------------------|--|---------------|--------------|---------------|----------|-------------------|--|
| <input type="checkbox"/> | | | | Internal Only | Stu Marx | 06/07/2004 2:26PM | |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | Order on Hold: Explanation Provided This order was placed on hold until we obtain customer's address. | | | Internal Only | Stu Marx | 06/07/2004 2:26PM | |

☐ Select All / Clear All

Add Note

Order - Notes page (1 of 2)

Note Details

Added On 06/07/2004 2:26PM Stu Marx

*Summary Order on Hold: Explanation Provided

Details Wait until customer is off the credit hold report.

Note Type

Note Origin Internal

*Visibility Internal Only

Related Line

Attachments

| Attachment | Description | Visibility | Added By | Date Added | |
|--------------------|-------------|------------|----------|-------------------|--|
| Telephone List.doc | Contacts | | Stu Marx | 06/07/2004 2:26PM | |

Apply Note Add an Attachment

Submit Save Validate Convert To Bulk Add Search Cancel 360 360-Degree View Top of Page

Order - Notes page (2 of 2)

Notes Summary

This section displays a summary of notes.

Subject and Details Displays a short and long description of the note contents.

Add Note Click to add a note for the order.

Add a Note or Note Details

Note Type Select either *Billing Notes*, *Comment*, *Customer Call*, *Customer Web*, *Pricing Note*, *Production Configuration*, *Research*, *Sales Note* or *Shipping Notes* as the type of note.

Visibility Select *Everywhere* or *Internal Only*. If you select *Everywhere*, users of all self service applications, including PeopleSoft Order Capture Self Service will be able to view the note. If you select *Internal Only*, notes will only be viewable to the CSR.

Attachments

Attachment Click to view an existing attachment.

Apply Note After entering information, click to apply the note to the order or order line or to the quote or quote line.

Add an Attachment Click to add an attachment. PeopleSoft Order Capters opens a new page for you to browse the network to locate and attach a file to the note.

Managing Holds

This section provides an overview of holds and discusses how to view the hold summary.

Understanding Holds

Hold validations fire automatically as soon as you submit an order or quote. You can access the Holds page to see if an order has been put on hold. If there is a hold on the order or quote, Status changes to Hold Order. If there is no hold, a "Currently No Holds" message is viewable. There are a variety of reasons as to why your order or quote will be placed on hold. There are also several ways in which you can resolve the problem.

The following table identifies each hold in PeopleSoft Order Capture:

| Hold Code | Explanation |
|-------------------------|---|
| Anonymous Customer Hold | Hold is triggered if the customer specified is setup as an anonymous Business Object. Use this hold when the fulfillment system does not support anonymous Customers. |

| Hold Code | Explanation |
|----------------------------------|---|
| Configuration Hold | Hold is triggered if a line has a configured product and it is not configured when capture is submitted. |
| Exceed Corporate Credit Limit | Hold is triggered if the customer has exceeded the credit limit range as specified on the Customer and Business Unit. |
| Credit Card Hold | Hold is triggered if the customer is paying by credit card, and the authorization fails. |
| Currency Conversion Not Possible | Hold is triggered if there is no currency conversion available for the pricing engine. |
| Exceeds Maximum Order Qty | Hold is triggered if the quantity on the line exceeds the maximum order quantity. |
| Under Minimum Quantity | Hold is triggered if the quantity on the line falls below the minimum order quantity. |
| Below Minimum Selling Price | Hold is triggered if the quantity on the line falls below the minimum selling price. |
| No Bill To Contact | Hold is triggered if the bill to contact is missing. |
| No Bill To Customer | Hold is triggered if the bill to customer is missing. |
| No Product Package Components | Hold is triggered if the line has a product that is a package, and no package components have been chosen. |
| No Capture Lines | Hold is triggered if the order or quote has no lines. |
| No Ship To Customer | Hold is triggered if the ship to customer is missing. |
| No Ship To Contact | Hold is triggered if the ship to contact is missing. |
| No Sold To Contact | Hold is triggered if the sold to contact is missing. |
| Product Catalog Violation | Hold is triggered if the product on the line is not in the customer's catalog. |
| Product Increment Violation | Hold is triggered if the line quantity is not a multiple of the increment defined on the product definition. |

| Hold Code | Explanation |
|--------------------------------|---|
| Product Prerequisite Violation | Hold is triggered if the product on the line has prerequisites that are not installed, or not on the current capture. |
| Price List Not Found | Hold is triggered if there is no price list found by the pricing engine. |
| Line Site Contact Required | Hold is triggered if a product requires a site, and a Site Contact is not one specified. |
| Line Site Required | Hold is triggered if a product requires a site, and there is not one specified. |
| Freight Calculation Hold | Hold is triggered if the calculation of freight charges by the third-party system fails. |

Note. You can use extend holds processing assuming you have created your own hold codes and extended the application class to run the logic. This is a simple configuration task in the PeopleSoft Order Capture Setup and Capture Type workbenches.

See [Chapter 3, “Setting Up PeopleSoft Order Capture,” Defining Hold Codes, page 34.](#)

See [Chapter 3, “Setting Up PeopleSoft Order Capture,” Defining Hold Processing, page 49.](#)

Pages Used to Manage Holds

| Page Name | Object Name | Navigation | Usage |
|--|-------------|--|--|
| Order - Holds (Hold Summary grid), Quote - Holds (Hold Summary grid) | RO_HOLD | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Orders and Quotes, Add Quote, Holds Orders and Quotes, Add Order, Holds | View holds on the order or quote. |
| Order - Holds (Hold Details grid), Quote - Holds (Hold Details grid) | RO_HOLD | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Orders and Quotes, Add Quote, Holds Click the Hold Details link. Orders and Quotes, Add Order, Holds Click the Hold Details link. | View hold details and override the hold, if necessary. |

Viewing the Hold Summary

Access the Quote - Holds page: Hold Summary grid.

Quote

Quote ID QU00025
Customer Western Pacific Wholesaler
Contact Bob Johnson

Quote Status Hold Quote
Customer Value Gold☆☆☆☆
Credit Rating 0

[Entry Form](#) | [Line Details](#) | **[Holds](#)** | [Notes](#) | [Related Actions](#) | [History](#)

[Hold Summary](#) | [Hold Details](#)

Go To

| Hold | *Hold Status | Message | Pending Action By |
|--------------------|--|--|--|
| No Bill To Contact | <input type="text" value="Requires Action"/> | A Bill To Contact is required for proper processing. Specify a Bill To Contact and resubmit. If a contact is specified, ensure that the proper options are specified in the contact setup. | Order Capture Admin Order Capture Manager UPG_ALLPAGES |
| No Ship To Contact | <input type="text" value="Requires Action"/> | A Ship To Contact is required for proper processing. Specify a Ship To Contact and resubmit. If a contact is specified, ensure that the proper options are specified in the contact setup. | Order Capture Admin Order Capture Manager UPG_ALLPAGES |

Quote - Holds page: Hold Summary grid

| | |
|--------------------------|---|
| Hold | Displays the description of the hold code. |
| Hold Status | Displays the hold status. You can change the hold status if your user security allows you to override it. |
| Message | Displays the explanation of the hold. |
| Pending Action By | List PeopleSoft roles that can override a specific hold code. |

Viewing Details or Removing Holds

Access the Quote - Holds page: Hold Details grid.

Quote

Quote ID QUO0025 **Quote Status** Hold Quote
Customer Western Pacific Wholesaler **Customer Value** Gold☆☆☆☆
Contact Bob Johnson **Credit Rating** 0

[Entry Form](#) / [Line Details](#) / **[Holds](#)** / [Notes](#) / [Related Actions](#) / [History](#)
[Hold Summary](#) | [Hold Details](#) Go To

Holds [Find](#) | [View All](#) First 1 of 2 Last

| | | | | | | | | | |
|---|-------------------------------|----------------|-----------------------|-----------|--------|-----------------|-----------------------|-----------|--------|
| Hold No Bill To Contact | Related Line 0 | | | | | | | | |
| *Hold Status <input type="text" value="Requires Action"/> | Status Date 11/04/2002 | | | | | | | | |
| Failed Value 0 | Pass Value 1 | | | | | | | | |
| Message A Bill To Contact is required for proper processing. Specify a Bill To Contact and resubmit. If a contact is specified, ensure that the proper options are specified in the contact setup. | | | | | | | | | |
| Audit History <table border="1"> <tr> <td>Created</td> <td>11/04/2002 2:44PM PST</td> <td>By</td> <td>SAMPLE</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Modified</td> <td>11/04/2002 2:44PM PST</td> <td>By</td> <td>SAMPLE</td> </tr> </table> | | Created | 11/04/2002 2:44PM PST | By | SAMPLE | Modified | 11/04/2002 2:44PM PST | By | SAMPLE |
| Created | 11/04/2002 2:44PM PST | By | SAMPLE | | | | | | |
| Modified | 11/04/2002 2:44PM PST | By | SAMPLE | | | | | | |

Quote page: Holds tab: Hold Details grid

Hold

Short explanation of the reason for the hold.

Related Line

Line number for the offending product(s).

Hold Status

Current status of the hold. This is a display-only field for regular users, such as most customer service contacts. However, users with manager-level permissions can select one of the following statuses:

- *Requires Action:* This selection indicates that action needs to happen. The system defaults to this status when the hold is created.
- *In Process:* This selection indicates that the hold still needs to be addressed and some action is taking place in relation to the hold.
- *Override Hold:* Select to ignore the hold and pass it. For example, you have a minimum price violation but are willing to allow the lower price for this order or quote. When this status is set, the system will no longer check the hold condition.
- *Passed:* This indicates that the hold has passed. The CSR can manually set this status, or the system will set this status when the order or quote has been submitted, and the condition has passed. When this status is set, the system will still check the hold condition, and set to *Requires Action* if the condition fails.

Note. A manager with the correct set of permissions can override the hold by placing the hold in *Override Hold* status and resubmitting the order or quote.

Status Date

Indicates the date the Hold status last changed.

Failed Value

This is the value that is causing the Hold Reason.

Pass Value

This is the value that is required to remove the hold.

Maintaining Orders

In this section, we provide an overview of how you can change orders, and we also explain how to maintain orders, based on fulfillment status.

Understanding Order Maintenance

Order maintenance and quote revisioning are triggered by the same toolbar button. This button allows changes to order data based upon configurable rules defined in the Capture Type Workbench. These rules determine the status of the order, and order lines, and will allow changes to certain data elements based upon this status.

To better understand order maintenance, we must first consider the both the header statuses and the line statuses that we deliver out of the box, and how they map to the PeopleSoft SCM fulfillment system. An order for example cannot be changed if has been shipped, or if the fulfillment system has not acknowledged its existence. In this overview section, let's provide two tables, one of which explains PeopleSoft Order Capture header statuses. Second, we can look at how line statuses in CRM map to PeopleSoft SCM.

Header Statuses

There following header statuses that can be displayed on the Entry Form:

| Header Status | Description |
|------------------|--|
| Open | Orders have an Open status after submission but prior to fulfillment. The pricing is locked for quotes. |
| Pending | Orders and quotes retain a status of Pending, when in edit mode. If you save the order or quote before submission, the order or quote retains the status of Pending. This allows the saving of a draft status. |
| In Process | Indicates that the order is in the process of fulfillment. Quotes cannot have a status of In Process since quotes are not part of fulfillment. |
| Hold | Indicates that there is an open hold on the order, based on hold conditions. |
| Fulfillment Hold | Indicates that the Fulfillment system has placed a hold on the order. |

| Header Status | Description |
|---------------|--|
| Complete | The order has gone through the fulfillment process. It has been shipped, or installed depending upon whether it is a tangible product or a service respectively. |
| Canceled | Order or quote has been canceled and no further action on this order or quote is necessary. |

Line Statuses

The following table shows the delivered line status mappings between PeopleSoft Order Capture and PeopleSoft SCM:

| SCM Line Status | CRM Line Status | CRM Line Partial Status |
|--------------------|--|---------------------------------|
| X (Canceled) | 1 (Canceled) | 1 (Canceled) |
| Q (Requisitioned) | 1000 (Open) | 1100 (Partially Open) |
| U (Purchased) | 1000 (Open) | 1100 (Partially Open) |
| B (Backordered) | 2000 (Backordered) | 2100 (Partially Backordered) |
| P (Pending) | 3000 (Pending) | 3100 (Partially Pending) |
| H (On Hold) | 3500 (Fulfillment Hold) Note. Holds that originate in CRM have the status, 9000. This is to differentiate a Hold that originated in CRM (status 9000), from a Hold that originated in SCM. | 3500 (Fulfillment Hold) |
| O (In Fulfillment) | 4000 (In Fulfillment) | 4100 (Partially In Fulfillment) |
| K (Picked) | 5000 (Picked) | 5100 (Partially Picked) |
| C (Closed) | 6000 (Shipped) | 6100 (Partially Shipped) |
| S (Shipped) | 6000 (Shipped) | 6100 (Partially Shipped) |

Allowable Maintenance

For the purposes of an integration with PeopleSoft Supply Chain Management, PeopleSoft Order Capture allows you to maintain orders where the header status is at least *Open* (1000) and not yet *Complete* (6000). PeopleSoft Order Capture allows order maintenance out of the box, where PeopleSoft Supply Chain Management is the fulfillment system under the following conditions:

- If the header status is greater than *Open* (1000) but less than *Complete* (6000).
- If the line status is less than *Open* (1000), line configurations and attributes can be changed.
- If the line status is less than *In Fulfillment* (4000), line customer information can be changed.
- If the line status is less than *In Fulfillment* (4000), line pricing data can be changed.

PeopleSoft Order Capture delivers integration points that support a realtime check into inventory to determine if the changes can be made based on the fulfillment status of the order. Additionally, all of the necessary EIPs are delivered to pass the changed data to fulfillment in order to process the change request.

See [Chapter 6, “Integrating with Fulfillment and Billing Systems,” Understanding Fulfillment, page 87](#).

You can add products to an order or quote, change an order or quote, change the dates for a quote, and so on. With related actions, the system keeps a record of and link to the original quote or order, so that you can maintain a history of how the quote or order progressed. Both the revisioned quote and the original quote may be used and both remain in open status. This allows you to offer different revisions of the products and pricing to your customers, and allows the CSR (or sales representative) to order from either of the quotes. Only the revisioned order can be used once changes have been made to the order.

When order maintenance is complete, various order capture pages reflect the change activity. The Summary page now contains a list of all the changes that have been made. Upon order submission, not only is a new business project fired, updating the Related Actions page, but the History page also tracks those changes.

Note. Changes to a quote can be made through the quote revisioning process. Creating a quote revision copies the instance of the quote to a new quote, and increments the revision number. This allows you to modify the quote as required.

See Also

[Chapter 6, “Integrating with Fulfillment and Billing Systems,” Activating EIPs, page 91](#)

[Chapter 6, “Integrating with Fulfillment and Billing Systems,” Mapping Line Statuses, page 92](#)

[Chapter 6, “Integrating with Fulfillment and Billing Systems,” Publishing Order and Quote Messages, page 94](#)

[Chapter 6, “Integrating with Fulfillment and Billing Systems,” Subscribing to Order Status Messages, page 99](#)

Viewing Related Actions

This section discusses how to:

- View related actions.
- Work with business projects.

Pages Used to View Related Actions

| Page Name | Object Name | Navigation | Usage |
|---|----------------|--|---|
| Order - Related Actions, Quote - Related Actions | RO_ASSOCIATION | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Orders and Quotes, Add Orders Click the Related Actions tab. Orders and Quotes, Add Quotes Click the Related Actions tab. | View related actions for orders and quotes. |

Viewing Related Actions

This page allows the CSR to view related actions for the order. A related object is data, such as a business project, that is somehow related to the order or quote. This data can reside in another PeopleSoft CRM application.

Access the Order - Related Actions page.

The screenshot shows the 'Order - Related Actions' page. At the top, there's a header bar with 'Order' and a toolbar with buttons: Save, Copy to Quote, Clone, Return to Search, Next, Previous, Add, Search, and Personalize. Below this, order details are displayed: Order ID CRO0307074, Order Status Submitted Order, Customer Value, and Credit Rating 0. A tabbed interface shows 'Entry Form', 'Line Details', 'Holds', 'Notes', 'Related Actions' (selected), and 'History'. Below the tabs is a 'Go To' dropdown menu. The main section is titled 'Related Actions' and contains a table with columns 'Type' and 'Description'. The table lists three items: 1. Original Quote (CRQ0307008/Status: Submitted), 2. Business Project (Order Capture BP - 20326 - In Process), and 3. Correspondence (Correspondence cf3d572eb8c611d89abb8512b1b121cc). At the bottom, there's another toolbar with buttons: Save, Copy to Quote, Clone, Return to Search, Next, Previous, Add, Search, and Top of Page.

Order - Related Actions page



Click the View Details button to open the related object in a new browser window.

Type

This is the type of business project. Related actions include business objects, upsells, etc.

Working with Business Projects

Business projects help organize process flow and are invaluable in tracing the order change activity. PeopleSoft Order Capture business projects, including Order, Quote, and Order Maintenance business projects, are explained in detail in a preceding chapter.

See Also

Chapter 5, “Working with PeopleSoft Order Capture Business Projects,” page 73

Viewing History

You can view history information, which includes all defined audit activity.

This section discuss the page used to view history.

Pages Used to View History

| Page Name | Object Name | Navigation | Usage |
|----------------------------------|-------------|---|--|
| Order - History, Quote - History | RO_HISTORY | Orders and Quotes, Search Orders and Quotes Select an order or quote and click the History tab. | For orders and quotes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> View a history of change activity. View interaction history. View complete history of activity. |

Viewing History Details

Access the Order - History page.

Order

Save

Copy to Quote

Clone

Return to Search

Next

Previous

Add

Search

Personalize

Order ID CRO0307074

Order Status Submitted Order

Customer Contact

Customer Value

Credit Rating 0

Entry Form

Line Details

Holds

Notes

Related Actions

History

Change History

Interaction History

Show All History

Go To Select One...

Change History

Customize Find

First 1 of 1 Last

| Description | Changed By | Associated Date | History Status |
|-------------------|------------|-------------------|----------------|
| 1 Order Submitted | JimD,JimD | 06/07/2004 1:57PM | Audit |

Interactions

Customize Find

1 of 1

| Date/Time Created | Type | Channel | Contact Name | Subject/Description | Created By |
|-------------------|----------|---------|--------------|-------------------------------|------------|
| 06/07/2004 1:59PM | Outbound | Email | JimD JimD | Order CRO0307074 Confirmation | JimD JimD |

Audit History

| | | | |
|----------|---------------------|--------|-----------|
| Created | 06/07/04 1:56PM PDT | CPCUST | JimD,JimD |
| Modified | 06/07/04 1:58PM PDT | CPCUST | JimD,JimD |

Save

Copy to Quote

Clone

Return to Search

Next

Previous

Add

Search

Top of Page

Order - History page

CHAPTER 9

Understanding Order Capture Integration with PeopleSoft Policy and Claims Presentment and PeopleSoft Banking Transactions

This chapter provides overviews of integration functionality, PeopleSoft Order Capture integration with PeopleSoft Policy and Claims Presentment, and PeopleSoft Order Capture integration with PeopleSoft Banking Transactions.

Integration Functionality

Integration of the best features from Order Capture and PeopleSoft industry solutions gives users more than one method to apply for products or quotes. There are two entry points: the Find Products and Order Capture components. The Order Capture Configurator is used to collect information for product applications and quotes. PeopleSoft takes this functionality one step further by enhancing the component configurations available in the user interface for the Order Capture application.

The high-level functionality provided by this integration are:

- PeopleSoft Policy and Claims Presentment and PeopleSoft Banking Transactions users have more than one method to apply for products or quotes.
- Configurator within PeopleSoft Order Capture will collect information for product applications and quotes.
- Order Capture data model tracks product applications and quotes, as well as supports the re-quoting process.
- Ability to interact with external systems to obtain quotes real-time and save them in the CRM database.
- Ability to track application or quote that resulted in creation of an account or policy.
- Enhanced PeopleSoft Order Capture user interface with flexible configurable options.
- Ability for a partner to request a quote.

Order Capture Integration with PeopleSoft Policy and Claims Presentment

This section discusses the business process model used to integrate PeopleSoft Order Capture and PeopleSoft Policy and Claims Presentment.

Policy and Claims Presentment Business Process Model

There are two methods for initiating a quote application available to Customer Service Representatives (CSRs): 360 - Degree View search page and the Create Order component. The CSR also has two methods of viewing or resuming an incomplete quote application: Identify the customer and select Incomplete Quote from the 360 - Degree View, or navigate to Search Quotes and Orders and search for the incomplete quote by customer name or quote reference number.

The created quotes and policies are displayed on the 360 - Degree View of the customer regardless of what method is used. Each quote goes through various transition stages and displays a Status accordingly.

The following table describes the various Status values of a quote application.

| Status | Description |
|---------------------|---|
| NEW | The status of Quote is <i>NEW</i> when CSR clicks on Create Quote and before selecting a product. |
| INCOMPLETE | A Quote is <i>Incomplete</i> when all the needed information for obtaining a Quote is not available. |
| SUBMITTED FOR QUOTE | This state implies that a request is sent to an external system to get a price for the configured quote. A quote is set to this state when Get Price is clicked. |
| QUOTED | This state implies a quote is obtained from an external system, but not yet purchased by the customer. A quote is set to this state upon receiving a price from the external system. |
| QUOTE ACCEPTED | This state implies that a customer has accepted the quote and is willing to purchase. The quote information is sent to external system for policy creation. Quote is set to this state when Buy is clicked |
| EXPIRED | This state implies a Quote is expired as of expiration date. This state can be achieved by manually expiring the Quotes or a batch process expiring the Quotes. |
| APPROVED | This state implies that the request for Policy creation is processed by the external system and a Policy is created in CRM system. This status will be set by the inbound async EIP. Also, it implies that a Quote is converted to Application. |
| REJECTED | This state implies that the request for policy creation is rejected by the external system. This status will be set by the inbound asynchronous EIP. |

360 - Degree View Search Page

The customer must be identified clearly with the proper role. The CSR can choose to either search and browse a catalog, or select Create Quote. If the catalog path is chosen, the underlying Order Capture records are created using Component Interface, and one of the methods to collect information is initiated. If Create Quote is selected, the CSR is transferred to the Order Capture component. The actions associated with the selected product are evaluated to determine if a quote can be offered on the product.

Create Order

Selecting the Order Capture component, the CSR or a partner, can choose to identify the customer or create a quote for an anonymous customer.

Products can be selected in the following ways:

- Enter the product and click on Collect Information.
- Search and browse the catalog. When a product is selected, one of the methods to collect information is initiated.
- Select a promotion to add a product and click on Collect Information

PeopleSoft Order Capture Integration with PeopleSoft Banking Transactions

This section discusses the business process model used to integrate PeopleSoft Order Capture with the PeopleSoft Banking Transactions.

Banking Transactions Business Process Model

The same two methods for initiating a quote application in PeopleSoft Policy and Claims Presentment are available to Customer Service Representatives (CSRs) using PeopleSoft Banking Transactions: 360 - Degree View search page and the Create Order component. Because the industries have different business processes, PeopleSoft Banking Transactions initiates an application for products, whereas the PeopleSoft Policy and Claims Presentment business process initiates an application for a quote.

Warning! PeopleSoft Policy and Claims Presentment users apply for a quote application. PeopleSoft Banking Transactions users apply for a product application.

The CSR also has two methods of viewing or resuming an incomplete quote application: Identify the customer and select Incomplete Application from the 360 - Degree View, or navigate to Search Quotes and Orders and search for the incomplete quote by customer name or application reference number.

The created applications are displayed on the 360 - Degree View of the customer regardless of what method is used. Each application goes through various transition stages and displays a Status accordingly.

The following table describes the various Status values of a product application.

| Status | Description |
|------------|---|
| NEW | The status is <i>NEW</i> when CSR clicks on Apply Product and before collecting any information. |
| INCOMPLETE | An application is <i>Incomplete</i> when all the needed information to complete the application is not available. Upon selecting Save for Later, the application is marked incomplete |

| Status | Description |
|-----------|--|
| SUBMITTED | This state implies that the information is sent to external system for Account creation. An Application is set to this state when 'Submit' button is clicked |
| EXPIRED | This state is when the application for the product has <i>Expired</i> . |
| APPROVED | This state implies that the request for account creation is processed by the external system and an account is created in CRM system. This status will be set by the inbound asynchronous EIP. |
| REJECTED | This state implies that the request for Account creation is rejected by the external system. This status will be set by the inbound async EIP. |

360 - Degree View Search Page

The customer must be identified clearly with the proper role. The CSR can choose to either search and browse a catalog, or select Apply Product. If the catalog path is chosen, the underlying Order Capture records are created using Component Interface, and one of the methods to collect information is initiated. If Apply Product is selected, the CSR is transferred to the Order Capture component. The product actions determine if a quote is required for the selected product.

Create Order

Banking transaction users use PeopleSoft Order Capture to apply for a product application or claims presentment users can obtain a quote application. Use the main order form for both of these types or orders, which is configured differently from a standard order. For instance, the billing section may be turned off via the display templates mechanism. Enter a customer and then select a product. After selecting the product, you have the ability to complete the application process using the PeopleSoft Configurator. You can then submit the application from the order capture page.

Order Capture Self-Service for PeopleSoft Banking Transactions and PeopleSoft Policy and Claims Presentment

The high-level functionality provided by this integration are:

- Ability to clone a quote that is associated with the policy and launch Configurator with all known values.
- Able to search for and view product applications or quotes.
- Guest users can search and browse catalogs. In order to apply for a product, the user has to either sign in using an existing account or register.
- Quotes will be created for incomplete applications, with status marked *Incomplete*.

Note. There is no quoting process for PeopleSoft for Banking Transactions. All information is collected before account creation. There are no additional questions asked upon final submission.

See *PeopleSoft Enterprise Policy and Claims Presentment 8.9 PeopleBook*, “Working with PeopleSoft Enterprise Policy and Claims Presentment Self-Service”.

See *PeopleSoft Enterprise Banking Transactions 8.9 PeopleBook*, “Working with PeopleSoft Enterprise Banking Transactions for Self-Service”.

CHAPTER 10

Working with Interactive Reports for PeopleSoft Order Capture

This chapter provides an overview of PeopleSoft Customer Relationship Management (PeopleSoft CRM) interactive reports and discusses how to:

- Set up interactive reports for PeopleSoft Order Capture.
- Use interactive reports for PeopleSoft Order Capture.

Understanding PeopleSoft CRM Interactive Reports

PeopleSoft CRM interactive reports are dynamic and interactive analytic reports. Interactive reports enable you to view and organize data in a wide variety of ways, which provides a more intensive overview of your collaborative selling activity.

You can better manage your sales solution activities by using interactive reports for PeopleSoft Order Capture.

In PeopleSoft Order Capture interactive reports, you can move around data elements on a report and instantly view the report using different dimensions. You can filter interactive reports data by selecting a single value for any dimension. You can also limit the interactive report so that it displays orders or quotes for one customer only. Looking at reports from different angles and perspectives affords an opportunity to gather valuable information about your business.

Interactive reports can be saved, exported to Microsoft Excel, or printed as hard copies. While you can be interactive with interactive reports by moving around data elements (dimensions), the changes that you make on the reports do not affect the PeopleSoft CRM database where the data originated.

PeopleSoft Order Capture Interactive Reports

PeopleSoft CRM Order Capture delivers four interactive reports:

- Order Revenue (for a single business unit).
- Order Metrics (for a single business unit).
- Enterprise Order Revenue (for all business units).
- Enterprise Order Metrics (for all business units).

Enterprise reports can analyze data across the enterprise or by specific business unit. Regular reports are restricted to individual business units. Depending upon the role assigned, users have access to either the two enterprise interactive reports or the two regular interactive reports.

Note. If a user has access to the two enterprise interactive reports, then that user can view analytics for specific business units as well as the entire enterprise.

Access to interactive reports in PeopleSoft Order Capture is determined by user role. It is therefore possible to restrict access to enterprise-wide interactive report information. Review the following table for a list of interactive reports that can be launched by each predefined PeopleSoft Order Capture role:

| Role | Enterprise Order Revenue | Enterprise Order Metrics | Order Revenue for Single Business Unit | Order Metrics for Single Business Unit |
|---------|--------------------------|--------------------------|--|--|
| OCADMIN | No | No | No | No |
| OCMGR | Yes | Yes | Yes | Yes |
| OCREP | No | No | No | No |

Setting Up Interactive Reports for PeopleSoft Order Capture

This section discusses how to set up PeopleSoft Order Capture interactive reports.

PeopleSoft Order Capture Interactive Reports

There are four interactive reports for PeopleSoft Order Capture that must be set up from within the Analytics Installation Options component. You must set up the model definition, query definition, and data source definition for each of the following:

- CR_RO_ORD_METRICS_BU (Order Metrics for single business unit).
- CR_RO_ORD_REVENUE_BU (Order Revenue for single business unit).
- CR_RO_ORD_METRICS (Enterprise Order Metrics).
- CR_RO_ORD_REVENUE (Enterprise Order Revenue).

Note. The Query Definition page should not require any changes during installation. However, the Model Definitions page requires updates at installation before you can run a PeopleSoft Order Capture interactive report. Use the Model Definitions page to define the interactive reports server name as well as other locations that the runtime uses to launch interactive reports.

See Also

PeopleSoft Enterprise CRM 8.9 Application Fundamentals PeopleBook, “Using Interactive Reports”

Using Interactive Reports for PeopleSoft Order Capture

This section provides an overview of the delivered PeopleSoft Order Capture interactive reports.

When you access a interactive report directly from the menu navigation, a run control page appears. You enter the report criteria on this page. Default values for all fields are based on the run control that you last used; if you do not need to change the criteria, one click takes you to the interactive report. Alternatively, you can select a different run control (which updates the default values for the other fields), or you can directly edit the criteria fields.

Profiles are stored by user, which means that users who repeatedly use the same criteria can enter that criteria once. The run control criteria (all fields except the run control name) are shared across all PeopleSoft Order Capture interactive reports. This means that when a run control is created while running a single PeopleSoft Order Capture interactive report, it is still available for all other interactive reports.

Dimensions

Interactive Reports are a combination of *Dimensions* and *Data Cubes*. Dimensions are static categories by which you group data, whereas the data cubes show the actual statistics. You can personalize the look of a interactive report by dragging and dropping the dimensions. Following are the available dimensions for PeopleSoft Order Capture interactive reports:

| | |
|-----------------------|---|
| Currency | Choose the type of currency. You can view only a single currency at a time from within an interactive report. All orders and quotes are captured in the base currency. To see all orders or quotes that were captured in U.S. dollars, select <i>USD</i> as the currency, and the orders will be converted into U.S. dollars. To see all of the orders and quotes captured in euros, select <i>Euros</i> as the currency. |
| Business Unit | Select all business units, or choose a specific business unit. |
| Source | Select all capture sources, or select a single capture source such as <i>Phone</i> . |
| Months | Select the month for which you want to view data. To view all of the data, select <i>All Months</i> . |
| Region | Select the geographic region. This is the region associated with the Sold To customer. This may not be defined for all orders and quotes, so a unique selection of <i>Not Specified</i> is used to show the data associated with orders and quotes without a region defined for the Sold To customer. |
| Capture Type | Select either <i>All Captures</i> , <i>Order</i> , or <i>Quote</i> . To view orders only, select <i>Order</i> . To view quotes only, select <i>Quotes</i> . Select <i>All Capture Types</i> to see both orders and quotes. |
| Capture Status | Select the status of the orders or quotes?for example, <i>All</i> , <i>Canceled</i> , <i>Hold</i> , <i>Open</i> , or <i>Pending</i> . |

Pages Used to Run Interactive Reports for PeopleSoft Order Capture



| Page Name | Object Name | Navigation | Usage |
|--------------------------|----------------------|--|---|
| Order Revenue | CR_RO_ORD_REVENUE_BU | Orders and Quotes, Interactive Reports, Order Revenue | Launch the Order Revenue interactive report and view revenue information for a specific business unit. |
| Order Metrics | CR_RO_ORD_METRICS_BU | Orders and Quotes, Interactive Reports, Order Metrics | Launch the Order Metrics interactive report and view metrics for a specific business unit. |
| Enterprise Order Revenue | CR_RO_ORD_REVENUE | Orders and Quotes, Interactive Reports, Enterprise Order Revenue | Launch the Enterprise Order Revenue interactive report. You can select values and adjust dimensions to give an overall view of the enterprise. You can also view revenue information by business unit. |
| Enterprise Order Metrics | CR_RO_ORD_METRICS | Orders and Quotes, Interactive Reports, Enterprise Order Metrics | Launch the Enterprise Order Metrics interactive report. You can select values and adjust dimensions to give an overall view of the enterprise. You can also view metrics by business unit. |

Using the Order Revenue Interactive Report

Access the Order Revenue page.

Note. Use the run control criteria of *Start Date* and *End Date* to access this interactive report.

Order Revenue

Rows To Scroll: 1

Rows per Page: 1

Currency: <Choose Currency>

Business Unit: All Business Units

Source: All Sources

Months: All Months

Region: All Regions

Orders and Quotes: All Orders and Quotes

Status: All Statuses

| | Number of Quotes / Orders | Order / Quote Revenue | Quotes Converted to Orders | % Quotes Converted to Orders |
|--|------------------------------|--------------------------|----------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| | | | | |

Order Revenue page

Note. The data elements (cubes) on this page are common to both Enterprise Order Revenue (for multiple business units) and Order Revenue for a single business unit.

| | |
|-------------------------------------|--|
| Number of Quotes/Orders | Displays the total number of orders and quotes captured by the system for the dimensions currently selected. |
| Order/Quote Revenue | Displays the total value of the captures, in the selected currency for the dimensions currently selected. |
| Quotes Converted to Orders | Displays the total number of quotes converted to orders for the dimensions currently selected. |
| % Quotes Converted to Orders | Displays the total number of quotes converted to orders divided by the total number of quotes for the dimensions currently selected. |

Using the Order Metrics Interactive Report

Access the CRM Collaborative Selling - Order Metrics page.

Note. Use the run control criteria of *Start Date* and *End Date* to access this interactive report.

Order Metrics

Preview

Excel

Rows To Scroll: 1

Rows per Page: 1

Currency: <Choose Currency>

Business Unit: All Business Units

Status: All Statuses

Orders and Quotes: All Orders and Quotes

Region: Not Specified

Months: All Months

Source: All Sources

| | Number of Orders / Quotes | Average Revenue per Order / Quote | Average Discount per Order / Quote | Average Lines per Order / Quote |
|--|---------------------------|-----------------------------------|------------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| | | | | |

Order Metrics page

Note. The following data elements (cubes) are common to both the Enterprise Order Metrics interactive report (for multiple business units) and Order Metrics interactive report (for a single business unit).

| | |
|---|--|
| Number of Orders/Quotes | Displays the total number of orders and quotes captured by the system for the dimensions currently selected. |
| Average Revenue per Order/Quote | Displays the average price of captured orders: the cumulative total revenue amount of all captures divided by the cumulative number of captures for the current dimensions. |
| Average Discount per Order/Quote | Displays the average discount applied to your orders. The average discount per capture is the cumulative total price minus the cumulative net price divided by the cumulative number of captures for the current dimensions. |
| Average Lines per Order/Quote | Displays the average lines per capture: the cumulative total of all capture lines divided by the cumulative number of captures for selected dimensions. |

Using the Enterprise Order Revenue Interactive Report

Access the Enterprise Order Revenue page.

Note. Use the run control criteria of *Start Date* and *End Date* to access this interactive report.

The Enterprise Order Revenue interactive report essentially offers the same view as the Order Revenue interactive report, but the Enterprise Order Revenue interactive report shows the data across all business units.

Using the Enterprise Order Metrics Interactive Report

Access the Enterprise Order Metrics page.

Note. Use the run control criteria of *Start Date* and *End Date* to access this interactive report.

The Enterprise Order Metrics interactive report offers the same view as the Order Metrics interactive report, but the Enterprise Order Metrics interactive report shows the data across all business units.

PART 3

PeopleSoft Order Capture Self Service

Chapter 11

Defining PeopleSoft Order Capture Self Service Business Units

Chapter 12

Setting Up PeopleSoft Order Capture Self Service

Chapter 13

Using PeopleSoft Order Capture Self Service

CHAPTER 11

Defining PeopleSoft Order Capture Self Service Business Units

This chapter provides overviews of PeopleSoft business units and PeopleSoft Order Capture Self Service business units and discusses how to define PeopleSoft Order Capture Self Service business units.

Understanding PeopleSoft Business Units

A business unit is an operational subset of your organization. Each business unit has its own way of storing information and each business unit possesses its own processing guidelines. You can use one business unit for all cases, or you can divide your operations based on whatever criteria makes the most sense. For example, you could create business units for different product lines or regions.

Note. PeopleSoft implementation personnel can also help you define the appropriate business unit structure.

Define PeopleSoft business units in this order:

1. Define global PeopleSoft business units, if you run multiple PeopleSoft applications.
2. Define PeopleSoft Customer Relationship Management (PeopleSoft CRM) business units.
3. Define PeopleSoft Order Capture Self Service business units.
4. Link PeopleSoft business units and PeopleSoft CRM business units to PeopleSoft Order Capture Self Service.

Note. Before you create multiple PeopleSoft Order Capture business units, be sure that you understand the concept of *tableSet controls*, the mechanism used to determine valid values for fields on transactional pages.

Understanding PeopleSoft Order Capture Self Service Business Units

PeopleSoft Order Capture Self Service business units provide the necessary defaults that enable self-service transactions, such as order creation and order tracking.

Note. Where applicable, business unit definition records must be synchronized across all systems. Business unit definitions created in PeopleSoft CRM are available in PeopleSoft Supply Chain Management. For fulfillment purposes, PeopleSoft Order Management and PeopleSoft Inventory business unit definitions must also be made available to PeopleSoft CRM. To synchronize business unit records across your business enterprise, use the business unit enterprise integration point.

Defining PeopleSoft Order Capture Self Service Business Units

This section discusses how to create a PeopleSoft Order Capture Self Service business unit.

See Also

[Chapter 2, “Defining PeopleSoft Order Capture Business Units,” Defining PeopleSoft Order Capture Business Units, page 16](#)

Pages Used to Define PeopleSoft Order Capture Self Service Business Units

| Page Name | Object Name | Navigation | Usage |
|----------------------|--------------|---|--|
| Self Service Options | BUS_UNIT_RO2 | Set Up CRM, Business Unit Related, Order Capture Definition, Self Service, Self Service | Establish valid credit cards, carriers, ship to countries, and other business unit defaults for PeopleSoft Order Capture Self Service. |

Creating a PeopleSoft Order Capture Self Service Business Unit

Access the Self Service page.

The screenshot displays the 'Self Service' page for Business Unit US001. The page has a tabbed interface with 'Internal' and 'Self Service' tabs. The 'Self Service' tab is active, showing a form with the following fields and options:

- Business Unit:** US001
- Description:** US001 NEW YORK OPERATIONS
- Self Service Section:**
 - Default Self Service Source:** Self-Service (dropdown menu)
 - Telephone:** 800 555 1212
 - Email Address:** customer_care@peoplesoft.com
 - Quick Entry Fields:** 4
 - Review Days:** 30
 - Advisor Dialog:** (text field with search icon)
 - Recommendation Template ID:** (text field with search icon)
- Options (checkboxes):**
 - ☐ Show Phone Country Code
 - ☒ Add a New Note
 - ☐ Use Accounts
 - ☐ Show Partner Contact Details
 - ☐ Show Recommendation

Self Service page (1 of 2)

| Valid Cards | | | Find | View All | First | 1-3 of 3 | Last |
|-------------|-------|------------------|------|----------|-------|----------|------|
| | *Type | Card Name | | | | | |
| 1 | 01 | VISA | | | | + | - |
| 2 | 04 | AMERICAN EXPRESS | | | | + | - |
| 3 | 05 | DISCOVER | | | | + | - |

| Valid Carriers | | | Find | View All | First | 1-4 of 4 | Last |
|----------------|----------|-------------------------------------|-----------------------|----------|-------|----------|------|
| | *Carrier | Default | Description | | | | |
| 1 | UPS2DA | <input type="checkbox"/> | UPS 2nd Day Air | | | + | - |
| 2 | UPSG | <input type="checkbox"/> | UPS Ground | | | + | - |
| 3 | USPS1S | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | USPS First-Class Mail | | | + | - |
| 4 | USPSPR | <input type="checkbox"/> | USPS Priority Mail | | | + | - |

| Valid Ship To Countries | | | Find | View All | First | 1-5 of 5 | Last |
|-------------------------|----------|----------------|------|----------|-------|----------|------|
| | *Country | Description | | | | | |
| 1 | CAN | Canada | | | | + | - |
| 2 | FRA | France | | | | + | - |
| 3 | GBR | United Kingdom | | | | + | - |
| 4 | IRL | Ireland | | | | + | - |
| 5 | USA | United States | | | | + | - |

Self Service page (2 of 2)

You must first create PeopleSoft Order Capture Business Units using the Internal tab to which you can associate the self service options.

Self Service

Default Self-Service Source Enter a code that identifies the source of the order. Every order generated in PeopleSoft Order Capture Self Service contains the source code that you define here.

Note. If you have both PeopleSoft Order Capture and PeopleSoft Order Capture Self Service, this allows you to differentiate orders that were captured by way of the web channel from orders entered by a customer sales representative or sales representative within your organization.

Show Phone Country Code Select this check box to display country codes in the phone numbers within the address book.

Telephone and Email Address Enter a telephone number and email address. The default values entered here are displayed to users when viewing the status of their orders. For example, as a consequence, self-service users might see the following: "If you have questions, contact us at email@message.com or call us at 1 800 555 5252."

Note. For credit card authorization purposes, CyberSource requires a telephone number and an email address. To guarantee processing, PeopleSoft CRM submits these defaults to CyberSource when an email or phone number was not defined for the person for whom an order was created.

| | |
|-------------------------------------|--|
| Add a New Note | Select this check box to be able to add notes and attachments to the order in PeopleSoft Order Capture Self Service. If you clear the check box, you are unable to add notes to the order. |
| Use Accounts | Select this check box to display the additional payment option of <i>Accounts</i> in the billing payment section of the order. If you clear the check box, this billing payment subtab will not appear on the order. |
| Quick Entry Fields | Enter the number of blank rows available by default when users select the Quick Order Entry option. |
| Review Days | Enter the number of default days that you want to make viewable to users when they first view order and quote status. |
| Show Partner Contact Details | Click this check box to display information that can be made available on the self service pages about products if the order is taken by a partner company. |
| Advisor Dialog | Select from your predefined advisor dialogs to provide the advisor dialog to fire for the recommendations section of the Find Products page. |
| Show Recommendation | Select this check box to enable recommendations to customers for a current product choice. Recommendations are determined by the product recommendation functionality that is a part of the Find Products page. The functionality uses any existing defined advisor dialog to make recommendations. This is done in real time and the self-service user does not have to answer any questions at the time. The results are based on previous advisor sessions and customer details as defined in the advisor dialog. |
| Recommendation Template ID | Select a template for the business unit level that determines your desired format or customer requirements for the display of recommendation information on self-service pages. |

Valid Cards, Valid Carriers, Valid Ship To Countries

Define your valid credit cards, valid carriers, and valid Ship To countries in the appropriate section on this page. Identify the default carrier in the Valid Carriers group box. Values will then be available for selection in the appropriate drop-down list box at runtime.

CHAPTER 12

Setting Up PeopleSoft Order Capture Self Service

This chapter provides a checklist of steps required to set up PeopleSoft Order Capture Self Service. Since most of this involves setting up options that are also required for PeopleSoft Order Capture, we have referenced that documentation here using direct links.

Once you have defined self-service business units, PeopleSoft Order Capture Self Service requires that you set up each of the following, in the order listed:

- Products.
- Pricing.
- Catalogs.
- PeopleSoft Order Capture Setup Workbench options.
- PeopleSoft Order Capture Type Workbench options.
- PeopleSoft Order Capture Integration Workbench options.
- Carrier definitions.
- Credit cards.
- Tax provider options.
- Consumer and business registration.
- Anonymous user access (guest user access).

Note. Each of these setup elements is explained in detail in the following sections.

See Also

PeopleSoft Enterprise CRM 8.9 Product and Item Management PeopleBook, “Setting Up Products”

PeopleSoft Enterprise Pricer 8.9 PeopleBook

PeopleSoft Enterprise CRM 8.9 Product and Item Management PeopleBook, “Creating Catalogs”

Chapter 3, “Setting Up PeopleSoft Order Capture,” Setting Up PeopleSoft Order Capture Tables, page 27

Chapter 3, “Setting Up PeopleSoft Order Capture,” Defining Order and Quote Processing, page 46

Chapter 3, “Setting Up PeopleSoft Order Capture,” Defining Integrations and Mappings, page 57

Chapter 3, “Setting Up PeopleSoft Order Capture,” Setting Up Freight Integration, page 62

Chapter 3, “Setting Up PeopleSoft Order Capture,” Setting Up Credit Card Integration, page 61

Chapter 3, “Setting Up PeopleSoft Order Capture,” Defining Tax Installation Options, page 66

PeopleSoft Enterprise CRM 8.9 Application Fundamentals PeopleBook, “Setting Up Customer Self-Service”

PeopleSoft Enterprise CRM 8.9 Application Fundamentals PeopleBook, “Setting Up PeopleSoft Customer Relationship Management Security and User Preferences,” Implementing Self-Service Security

CHAPTER 13

Using PeopleSoft Order Capture Self Service

This chapter provides an overview of PeopleSoft Order Capture Self Service, delivered user ID and user role identification, and supplemental pagelet identification, and discusses how to:

- Select products.
- Use Quick Entry.
- Use the shopping cart.
- Manage checkout.
- View order or quote status.

Understanding PeopleSoft Order Capture Self Service

PeopleSoft Order Capture Self Service delivers an intuitive interface that allows consumer users, company representatives, and brokers to easily create and manage the web channel. PeopleSoft Order Capture Self Service synchronizes with PeopleSoft Order Capture to allow self service users to track all orders, whether created by a customer service representative, an agent through the call center, or by themselves through the web.

PeopleSoft Order Capture Self Service works in conjunction with the following CRM features, some of which are common to all self service applications, and others which specifically complement PeopleSoft Order Capture Self Service:

- Security elements, including the defining of user roles and associated permissions.
- Address book.
- Sign in.
- Registration.
- Profile maintenance.
- Contact Us and Chat.
- Attributes.
- Product catalog.
- Search Catalog.
- PeopleSoft Advisor.
- PeopleSoft Configurator.

Note. Functionality that is common to both PeopleSoft Order Capture and PeopleSoft Order Capture Self-Service, such as integration with order fulfillment, pricing, freight, and tax integration, is documented in previous chapters of the this book.

See Also

PeopleSoft Enterprise CRM Real-Time Advisor 8.9 PeopleBook

PeopleSoft Enterprise CRM Advanced Configurator 8.9 PeopleBook

Understanding Delivered User ID, User Role Identification and the Creating of Passwords

This table shows the users and roles that PeopleSoft Order Capture Self Service delivers. You can adopt these particular users and roles, or you can modify them to better suit your business needs.

Note. To modify permissions for these delivered user roles, navigate to PeopleTools, Security, Permissions & Roles, Roles.

| User ID | Role Name | Role Description | Access |
|-------------|-----------|--|--|
| GUEST | Guest | An anonymous user that accesses the web channel. | Guests have access to the Sign In & Registration, Products and Services, Catalog Search, Shopping Cart, and Site Selection pages. |
| CPSS, CPSS2 | Consumer | A consumer that represents him- or herself. | Consumers have guest privileges without the sign-in (and registration) options. They also have access to the Customer Care, Order Status, Quote Status, Profile Maintenance, and Contact Us pages. |

| User ID | Role Name | Role Description | Access |
|-----------------|-----------|--|---|
| CPCUST, CPCUST2 | Customer | A customer represents a single customer. | Customers have all consumer privileges as well as quick entry privileges. |
| CPBRKR, CPBRKR2 | Broker | A broker represents multiple customers. | Brokers have all customer privileges plus customer selection privileges. Customer selection privileges allow brokers to select the customer that they want to represent for a particular session. |

Note. User IDs that end with a 2 are associated with the CRM01 setID.

Setting Password Expiration and Changing Passwords

To set the internal self-service password expiration date to one other than the external date , navigate to Set Up CRM, Security, Self-Service, User Registration.

The password expiration options are accessed in the Password Security Policies group box of the User Registration page. The options enable you to setup your password expiration policy. For example, the internal passwords might be set to expire every 60 days while the setting for the external passwords might be set to never expire. In the Password Security Policies group box a password can be set to never expire by selecting the password Never Expires radio button, or the password can be set to expire by selecting the *Password Expires* radio button and entering the number of days until expiration in the associated field. A password expiration date is calculated based on the last password change date as determined from the tools PSOPRDEFN table.

When the password expires and you click the Sign In button on the Sign In page, you are presented with the Change Password page. Here you enter your old password, your new password and enter the new password again to confirm it. Click the Save button or if it becomes necessary, you can cancel and return to the sign in page.

Understanding Supplemental Pagelet Identification

PeopleSoft Order Capture Self Service delivers these pagelets, which are enabled by the PeopleSoft Order Capture Self Service product, as part of the PeopleSoft CRM Portal Pack:

- Catalog Search (RX_PROD_SRCH_PGT).
- Shopping Cart (RE_CART_PGT).
- Recent Orders (RE_C_ORD_PGT).
- Recent Quotes (RE_C_QUO_PGT).

Selecting Products

This section discusses how to:

- Find products.
- Choose a product.
- View product details.
- Compare products.
- Launch PeopleSoft Advisor.

Pages Used to Select Products

| Page Name | Object Name | Navigation | Usage |
|--------------------|-----------------|--|--|
| Find Products | RX_PROD_SRCH | Find Products | Search a particular catalog or browse all catalogues, get advice on products, and create an order or quote capture. |
| Product Catalog | RB_CATALOG | On the Find Products page, click a catalog link. | View and select a product. |
| Product Details | RB_PROD_DTL | On the Catalog page, click a product link. | View product details, select a quantity, change units of measure, and add the product to the shopping cart. |
| Product Comparison | RB_CATALOG | On the Catalog page, select up to three Compare check boxes. Click the Add to Compare Pad button. | Compare as many as three products. |
| PeopleSoft Advisor | RAD_ADVISOR_RUN | On the Find Products page, click the Get Advice link. On the Catalog page, you can also click the Need help choosing a product? link. | Launch the PeopleSoft Advisor, answer the questions in the dialogue presented and receive a personalized recommendation. |




Finding Products

Access the Find Products page.

Find Products

Search or browse for products to add to your order. Not able to find the right product? [Get Advice](#)

Recommended Products

| | | |
|--|--|---|
|  <p>Wine and Beverage Refrigerator</p> <p>Add to Cart</p> |  <p>Refrigerator, Custom</p> <p>Add to Cart</p> |  <p>6000 BTU Room Air</p> <p>Add to Cart</p> |
|--|--|---|

Search Catalog


Catalog

Keywords

[Advanced Search](#)
[Search Tips](#)

Browse Catalog

You may select products from one of our catalogs.

| | |
|--|--|
|  | <p>Cold Storage Unit Catalog</p> <p>Browse through our Freezer and Refrigeration models. Meet ALL of your cooler needs with our award-winning solutions.</p> |
|--|--|

Find Products page

This page provides several methods to find products.

- Click the Get Advice link when you are unsure of the product or type of product that you need and the system will guide you in selecting the appropriate item through an Real-Time Advisor dialogue consisting of a series of questions and answers.
- The system can present you with recommended products based upon your prior ordering activity.
- Select and search a particular catalogue and when you have enough information to provide definitive search criteria, use the Advanced Search link to search on such things as keywords, brand name, descriptions and product ID.
- Select catalogue links to browse listed catalogues.

Choosing a Product

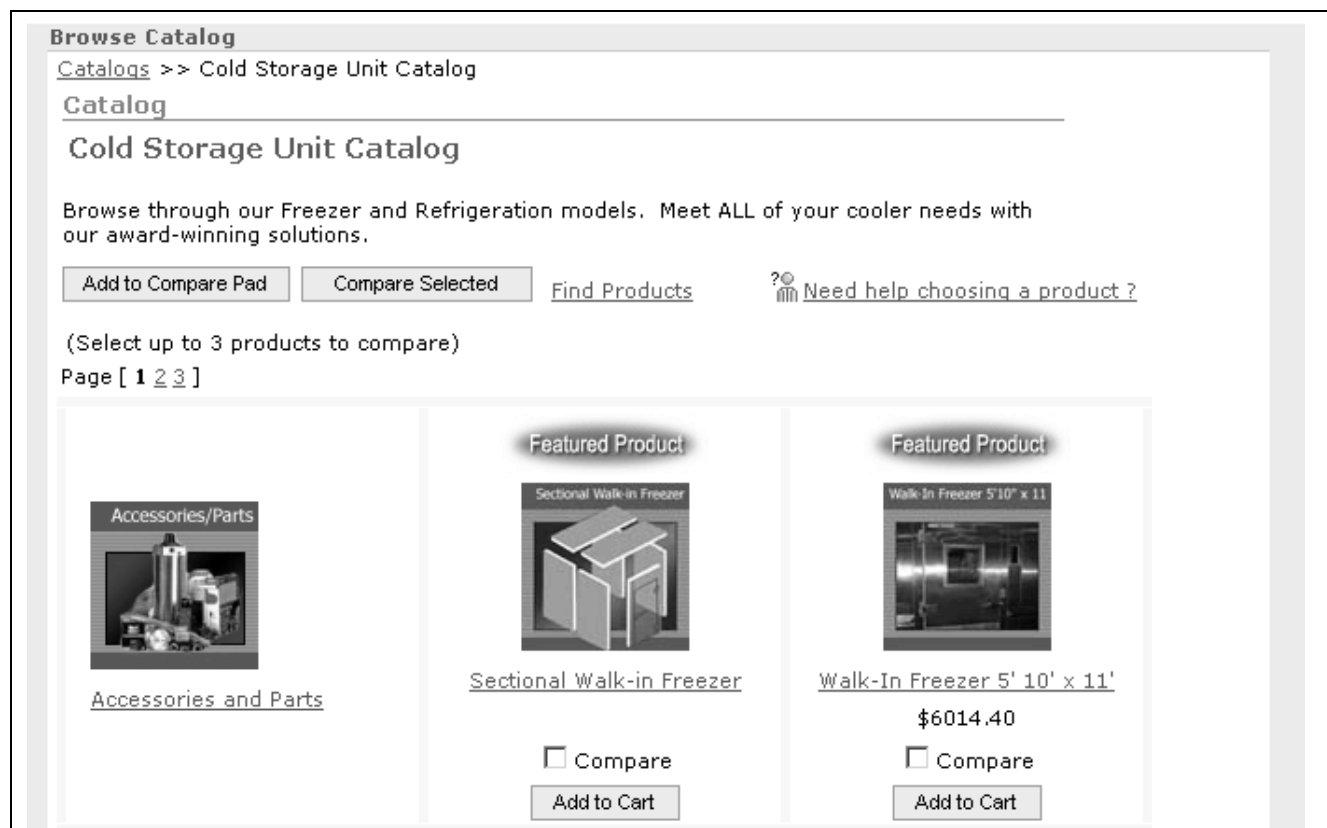
Access the Product Catalog page.



Product Catalog page (1 of 2)

Recommended Products

The system uses the Real-Time Advisor product to recommend products selected for your consideration. These products are selected based on the Advisor Dialog defined on the Business Unit.



Product Catalog page 2 of 2

Browse the catalog using the Page link to view the pages of the catalogue.

Compare and Add to Compare Pad

Select a Compare check box for more than one product. Click the Add to Compare Pad button. Using the Page links and the Add to Compare button enables you to add products from multiple pages within the catalog to the comparison.

Compare Selected

Click this button and the system compares up to three products at a time from the compare pad. This is based on the display template that is set up for the product catalogs.

Find Products

Click this link to return to the Find Products page.

Need help choosing a product?

Click to launch the PeopleSoft Real-TimeAdvisor. PeopleSoft Real-Time Advisor asks a series of questions that returns product recommendations based on your answers to the questions.

Featured Product

The system can highlight various products and distinguish them as featured products in the various catalogues.

However, you can click any product link to access its Product Detail page. For example, if you click the Walk-In Freezer 5' 10' x 11' product link, you can access the Product detail page for this product and its associated agreements and enhancements.

Viewing Product Details

Access the Product Detail page.

Product Detail

[Catalogs](#) >> [Cold Storage Unit Catalog](#) >> Walk-In Freezer 5' 10' x 11'

Product Details

Walk-In Freezer 5' 10' x 11'

Walk-In Freezer 5'10" x 11'



Product ID SR2000

Price \$6014.40

Unit Each

Quantity

Add to Cart

Product Description

Our cooler solution handles temperatures below freezing even when the external temperatures hit over 100 degrees! This large appliance will enable you to store your products effectively.

Agreements for this product

Product Detail page 1 of 2

Agreements for this product



[Ice Burg Freezer PM Service](#)

Enhance this product with these additions



[Freezer Shelves](#)



[GBI IntelliAIRE Thermostat](#)



[Equipment Light Bulb](#)

The next step up from this product



[Custom Build Freezer](#)



[Sectional Walk-in Freezer](#)

Dimensions

Product Detail page 2 of 2

Agreements for this product and Enhance this product with these additions

Click to see links for such things as preventive maintenance or service agreements and enhancement for the product selected and then click the item links to see detailed information about the available agreements and enhancements.

The next step up from this product

Select this link to see products that are considered a step up from the product you are currently considering—perhaps for quality, size or capacity.

Note. You can access Product Details from several pages, including the Catalog, Shopping Cart, Checkout, and Order/Quote Status pages.

Comparing Products

Access the Product Comparison page.




Browse Catalog

Catalog

Product Comparison

You may select products from one of our catalogs.

Side by Side Comparison

| | Side by Side Refrigerator, 27 cu.ft. | Refrigerator, Custom | 21.6 cu. ft. Refrigerator |
|----------------------------|--|--|---|
| |  |  |  |
| Price | \$1200.00 | \$1000.00 | \$1530.00 |
| Product Description | This Side by Side Refrigerator, 27 cu.ft. has an temperature of +32 degrees and configurable shelving arrangement. This refrigerator is perfect for the household and makes the most of space in your kitchen. With a flexible shelving arrangement you can use your refrigerator for large platters, catering and storage at +32. | Refrigerator, Custom, Side by Side | This Refrigerator has cooling temperature of + 32 degrees. |
| Unit of Measure | Each | Each | Each |
| | Add to Cart | Add to Cart | Add to Cart |
| | Remove | Remove | Remove |

Product Comparison page (1 of 2)

| Dimensions | | | |
|--|---------|------------------------------|------------------------------|
| Height | 5'25" | Custom | 5'10" |
| Length/Depth | 3' | Custom | 3' |
| Width | 2'10" | Custom | 3'4" |
| Weight | 180lbs. | Varies | 200lbs. |
| Industrial Products Information | | | |
| Available Colors | | Black, White, Chrome, Bisque | Black, White, Chrome, Bisque |
| Industry Specific | | All Industries | All Industries |

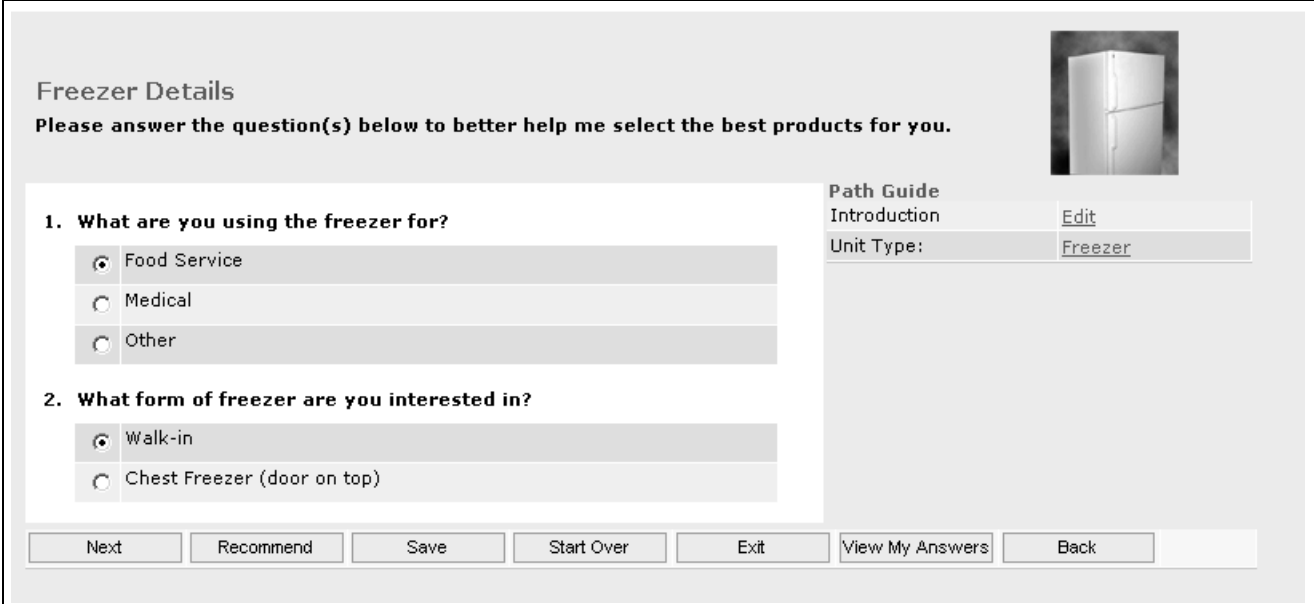
[Return to Catalog](#)

Product Comparison page (2 of 2)

| | |
|--------------------------|---|
| Add to Cart | Add the product to your shopping cart. |
| Remove | Click to remove a product from the current comparison. |
| Return to Catalog | Click to return to the catalogue where you can add other products for a total of three products for any one comparison. |

Launching PeopleSoft Real-Time Advisor

Access the PeopleSoft Advisor page.



The screenshot shows the 'Freezer Details' page of the PeopleSoft Real-Time Advisor. At the top right is an image of a white refrigerator-freezer. Below the title, a prompt asks the user to answer questions to help select the best products. The main content area contains two questions with radio button options. Question 1 asks 'What are you using the freezer for?' with options: Food Service (selected), Medical, and Other. Question 2 asks 'What form of freezer are you interested in?' with options: Walk-in (selected) and Chest Freezer (door on top). To the right of the questions is a 'Path Guide' section with links for 'Introduction' (with an 'Edit' link) and 'Unit Type: Freezer'. At the bottom is a row of buttons: 'Next', 'Recommend', 'Save', 'Start Over', 'Exit', 'View My Answers', and 'Back'.

PeopleSoft Advisor page


| | |
|------------------|--|
| Next | After selecting or entering your applicable response, click to move to the next dialogue in the series of the advisor's questions. |
| Save | Click to save your responses to complete or modify at another time. |
| Recommend | Click to access the advisor's product recommendations based on you answers to the advisor dialogue. |

Recommendations

Select the Recommend button on the Advisor page

Recommendations

Here is a list of the refrigerators/freezers that I believe will best meet your needs. You can compare units or view the details of a particular unit. Once you've decided which one to purchase, you can add that unit to your order.



| Compare | Product | Details | Score |
|--------------------------|--|--|-------|
| <input type="checkbox"/> | Custom Build Freezer | Product ID: SR2900 Appliance Usage: ALL Category: WALK-INS Freezer Flooring: CUSTOM Freezer Lighting: CUSTOM Catalog Product Group: WALK-INS List Price: | 100 |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | Sectional Walk-in Freezer | Product ID: SR3000 Appliance Usage: ALL Category: WALK-INS Freezer Flooring: CUSTOM Freezer Lighting: CUSTOM Catalog Product Group: FREEZER List Price: | 100 |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | Walk-In Freezer 5' 10' x 11' | Product ID: SR2000 Appliance Usage: ALL Category: WALK-INS Freezer Flooring: EPOXY Freezer Lighting: HALO Catalog Product Group: WALK-INS List Price: | 76 |

PeopleSoft Advisor — Recommendations page

Score

The system displays suitable products and scores them based on how well these products fit your responses to the advisor’s questions.

Using Quick Order Entry

This section provides an overview of Quick Order Entry and discusses how to select products quickly.

Understanding Quick Order Entry

There are two ways to add products to the shopping cart: from the Product Details page or from Quick Order Entry page. Quick Order Entry is intended for users who are familiar with the products and the product IDs that they order. Quick Order Entry delivers a simple form to support speedy entry of product information.

Page Used to Use Quick Order Entry

| Page Name | Object Name | Navigation | Usage |
|-------------------|----------------|--|---|
| Quick Order Entry | RE_QUICK_ENTRY | Click the Quick Order Entry link on the Main Menu. | Create orders or quotes rapidly when you are familiar with the product and already know the product ID. |

Selecting Products Quickly

Access the Quick Order Entry page.

Quick Order Entry

Enter the product IDs and all known information. Missing fields will be defaulted.

| Product ID | Quantity | Units | Notes |
|----------------------|----------------------|----------------------|----------------------|
| <input type="text"/> | <input type="text"/> | <input type="text"/> | <input type="text"/> |
| <input type="text"/> | <input type="text"/> | <input type="text"/> | <input type="text"/> |
| <input type="text"/> | <input type="text"/> | <input type="text"/> | <input type="text"/> |
| <input type="text"/> | <input type="text"/> | <input type="text"/> | <input type="text"/> |

[Clear Form](#)
[Show More Entries](#)

Quick Order Entry page

| | |
|-------------------|--|
| Product ID | Enter the product ID. |
| Quantity | Enter a quantity. If you do not select a quantity, a quantity of <i>1</i> defaults into the shopping cart. |
| Units | Enter either the unit of measurement (UOM) code (such as <i>ea.</i>) or the UOM description (such as <i>each.</i>) |
| Notes | Add notes, which appear for the specified product when you access the shopping cart. |

Using the Shopping Cart

This section provides an overview of the shopping cart and discusses how to:

- Work from within the shopping cart.
- Delete products from the shopping cart.
- Add notes or attachments.

Understanding the Shopping Cart

The shopping cart displays all of the products that you select for an order or quote. You can perform these operations from the Shopping Cart page:

- Update quantity and recalculate price.
- Configure products or packages.
- Add notes and attachments to an order.
- Remove products.
- Proceed to checkout.

Pages Used to Access and Use the Shopping Cart

| Page Name | Object Name | Navigation | Usage |
|---|-------------------|---|--|
| Shopping Cart | RE_CART | Quick Order Entry Click the Add to Cart button. Find Products, Select product Click Add to Cart. Checkout Select Change Order link. Shopping Cart pagelet, Click Checkout. (If portal pack is installed) | View the contents of the shopping cart, and then proceed to checkout. |
| Delete Confirmation | RX_DELETE_CONFIRM | Click the Delete link on the Shopping Cart page. Shopping Cart, Notes & Attachments, Click Delete Attachments. | Confirm the removal of products (or notes and attachments) from the shopping cart. |
| Notes & Attachments (notes and attachments) | RE_NOTES | Shopping Cart, Add Notes & Attachments Notes & Attachment link | Add a note or an attachment to the products that are being ordered. |


Working from within the Shopping Cart

Access the Shopping Cart page.

Shopping Cart

Click Checkout to specify shipping and payment information.

Product Information

| | Product | Product ID | Qty | Units | Price | |
|---|---|------------|--------------------------------|-------|-----------|------------------------|
|  | Add an Agreement to this Product <u>Custom Build Freezer</u> Custom-built Walk-In is built to order based on yo... | SR2900 | <input type="text" value="1"/> | Each | \$4873.05 | Delete |
| | <u>Freezer Shelves</u> These shelves are compatible with all of our walk-... | 10019 | 1 | Each | \$99.00 | |
| | <u>GBI IntelliAIRE Thermostat</u> The GBI IntelliAIRE is an advanced microprocessor-... | 10020 | 1 | Each | \$145.00 | |
| | <u>Replacement Compressor</u> Replacement Compressor for Walk In Freezers.... | 10022 | 1 | Each | \$254.05 | |
| | <u>Freezer Door Options</u> Custom Freezer Door Specs... | SR05001 | 1 | Each | \$0.00 | |
| | <u>Freezer Door 34in x78in</u> Freezer Door 34in x78in... | SR2220 | 1 | Each | \$2393.00 | |
| | <u>Freezer Footprint Options</u> | SR2050 | 1 | Each | \$0.00 | |
| | <u>Freezer Footprint 7'9"x11'7"</u> Freezer Footprint 7'9"x11'7"... | SR2952 | 1 | Each | \$1982.00 | |

If you have made changes, click Recalculate for new totals.

Billable Charges

| | |
|-----------------|---------------|
| Subtotal | \$4873.05 USD |
|-----------------|---------------|

Shopping Cart page

Click the product's name link to view product details.

Add an Agreement to this Product

Click if you choose to add available agreements, such as a consulting, preventive maintenance, or service agreement for a selected product. Because it is often crucial that certain agreements be ordered with the initial purchase of a product, this is a second opportunity to choose agreements. This option is first presented on the Product Details page.

Qty (quantity)

Update the quantity of a product.

Click the Recalculate button to determine new total charges.

Delete

Click this link to remove the line item from the shopping cart.

Click the Recalculate button to determine new total charges.

Note. When you delete a product all associated agreements for that product are also deleted by the system. Enhancements are not automatically deleted. You must delete them individually using the Delete link on the Shopping Cart page.



Click to configure when the product is a dynamic package having various options that you must choose, such as when a product must be custom built. When you have configured the product with its various options, a composite price is calculated by the system. This icon is not available or applicable to all products.

See *PeopleSoft Enterprise CRM 8.9 Product and Item Management PeopleBook*, “Setting Up Products,” Defining Product Package Components.



Click to fully configure a ready made product with optional features. This icon is displayed only when applicable and is not available for all products.

See *PeopleSoft Enterprise CRM Advanced Configurator 8.9 PeopleBook*.

Recalculate

Click to recalculate the price when you make changes to your selections, such as increasing or reducing the quantity of a product or after removing a product.

Checkout

Proceed to checkout.

Continue Shopping

Return to the catalog to select additional or different products. When you click the Continue Shopping button, the system retains the existing contents of your shopping cart.

Note. When you have a configurable product or package in your shopping cart, it must be configured before you proceed to checkout. If a product has required attributes, you must specify the attribute value before you can proceed to checkout.

Deleting Products from the Shopping Cart

Access the Delete Confirmation page.

Delete Confirmation page

Click the Delete link on the Shopping Cart page to access the Delete Confirmation page, where you can delete shopping cart contents.

Note. When you delete a product any associated *agreements* are also deleted. However, you must delete any associated enhancements for the deleted core product that you have previously included in your shopping cart.

Adding Notes or Attachments

Access the Notes & Attachments page.

Shopping Cart

Notes & Attachments

Enter notes and attach files for the product. Click Save when you are done.

Notes

Men's Long Sleeve Bike Jersey (10000)

Summary

Enter a subject title for your note.

Details

Enter any special instructions for this product.

Click "Attach a File" to select the file to attach from your computer.

[Cancel and Return to Shopping Cart](#)

Notes & Attachments page

See Also

PeopleSoft Enterprise CRM 8.9 Application Fundamentals PeopleBook, “Working with Notes and Attachments”

Managing Checkout

This section discusses how to:

- Manage shipping, product, and payment options from the Checkout page.
- Handle multiple shipments.
- Access and change product attributes.
- Receive an order or quote confirmation.
- Change a submitted order derived from a quote.

Pages Used to Manage Checkout

| Page Name | Object Name | Navigation | Usage |
|---|--------------------|--|--|
| Checkout | RE_SUMMARY | Shopping Cart, Click Checkout button. | Manage shipping, product, and payment information. |
| Multiple Shipments | RE_DESTINATION | Checkout, Multiple Shipments button | Create more than one shipment destination for the order. |
| Notes & Attachments Summary (notes and attachments summary) | RE_NOTE_SUMMARY | Checkout: Shipments and Payments, View Notes & Attachments link. Order/ Quote Details, Click View Notes & Attachments link. | Displays a list of notes and attachments on the order. |
| Attributes | RE_ATTR_RUNTIME | Checkout, Click Attributes link on a Product line. | Enter product attributes where attributes are allowed for a product. |
| Order/Quote Confirmation | RE_STATUS | Checkout, Click the Submit Order button or the Save as Quote button. | Displays order/quote confirmation. |
| Order Change | RX_PROCEED_CONFIRM | Checkout, Click on Change Order link (from a quote). | Change an order that was derived from a quote. When you change an order, all special pricing for quotes is lost, and it becomes necessary to add this confirmation page. |

Managing Shipping, Product, and Payment Options From the Checkout Page

Access the Checkout page.

Checkout

Shipping and Payment

Verify the order and enter payment information. Click Submit Order to process order and receive the order confirmation.

[Change Order](#)

Shipment

Shipping Address

Jack Pepper
Shoreview Medical
2455 Augustine Drive
Santa Clara, CA 95054
United States

[Change Address](#)

Service Address

No address selected

[Change Address](#)

Shipping Options

Select Shipping Method

DHL Airways

Requested Arrival Date

(example: 06/04/2004)

Would you like all of your products shipped as they become available or in a single shipment?

☒ **Single Shipment**

☐ **Ship as Items Available**

Checkout page (1 of 3)

Product Information

| Product | Product ID | Qty | Units | Price |
|---|------------|-----|-------|------------|
| Walk-In Freezer 5' 10' x 11' Our cooler solution handles temperatures below fre... | SR2000 | 2 | Each | \$10825.92 |
| Ice Burg Freezer PM Service Keep your Cold Storage Equipment Ice Burg Cold wit... | WS4000 | | Each | \$880.00 |
| Service Agreement for Walk-In Freezer 5' 10' x 11' | | | | |

Total Charges

Billable Charges

| | | |
|------------------|------------|-----|
| Subtotal | \$11705.92 | USD |
| Discount | \$0.00 | USD |
| Surcharge | \$0.00 | USD |
| ----- | | |
| Total | \$11705.92 | USD |

If you have made changes, click Recalculate for new totals.

Invoice Payment Info

You may enter a PO number below for your own tracking purposes.

Customer PO

Payment Terms Due in 30 Days

Checkout page (2 of 3)

Credit Card Payment Info

Enter your Credit Card information below.

Credit Card Type

Credit Card Number


Expiration Month

Expiration Year

First Name on Card

Last Name on Card


Billing Address Information

Billing Address
Jack Pepper
Shoreview Medical
2455 Augustine Drive
Santa Clara, CA 95054
United States
 [Change Address](#)

Order Notes

Submit Order

Save as Quote

 [Change Order](#)

Checkout page (3 of 3)

Shipment

Multiple Shipments

Click to access the Multiple Shipments page and send the products contained in the order to different locations or by way of different shipping methods. This assumes that there is more than one product. To create multiple shipments for the same product, enter the product and appropriate quantity into the cart twice.

Product Information

Click a product link to view product details. On the Product Details page, you can change quantity or view or configure a configurable product, or view and change attributes for a product with attributes.

Invoice Payment Info (invoice payment information) and Credit Card Payment Info (credit card payment information)

Enter a purchase order number if you are paying by invoice. Enter an account number if you are ordering a service that can be billed to a service account, such as a cable television account. Enter credit card information if payment is by credit card.

Note. The payment method that displays is based on the defined customer or consumer as well as the preferred payment method that is established on the customer's or consumer's record.

Submit Order

Click to submit the order for processing. You receive an order confirmation.

Save as Quote

Click to save as a quote. You receive a quote confirmation.

Change Order

Click to return to the shopping cart and make changes.

Shipping Options

| | |
|--------------------------------|---|
| Change Address | Change the shipping, service, or billing address. |
| Select Shipping Method | Choose a preferred carrier from the drop-down list. |
| Single Shipment | Select to prevent partial shipments of this order. |
| Ship as Items Available | Select to allow partial shipments. |

Note. Partial shipments may increase freight charges.

Handling Multiple Shipments

Access the Multiple Shipments page.

If there are two or more order lines in the shopping cart, you can divide shipments.

To divide shipments:

1. Select the product that you want to designate for a separate shipment on the Multiple Shipments page.
2. Click the New Shipment button to request a new shipment.

Note. You cannot split a single line consisting of more than one quantity of a single item into two shipments. Also, you cannot ship components of a single package separately.

Accessing and Changing Product Attributes

Access the Attributes page.

If available for that product, access the Attributes page by clicking on the Attributes icon next to a product.

Fields on the Attributes page are dynamic. You define the attributes that are necessary for the products that you sell. Attributes are an optional feature. Attribute groups allow you to associate a different set of attributes to different sets of products.

See Also

PeopleSoft Enterprise CRM 8.9 Product and Item Management PeopleBook, “Setting Up Products,” Defining Product Attributes

Receiving an Order or Quote Confirmation

Access the Order or Quote Confirmation page.

Quote Confirmation

Quote ID CRQ0300079
 Status Submitted

Shipment

Shipping Address
 Jack Pepper
 Shoreview Medical
 2455 Augustine Drive
 Santa Clara, CA 95054
 United States

Shipping Options
Shipping Method
 DHL Airways

Product Information

| Product | Product ID | Qty | Units | Price |
|---|------------|-----|-------|-----------|
| Wine and Beverage Refrigerator Fashioned of rugged stainless steel, it keeps your... | D9998 | 1 | Each | \$1080.00 |

Total Charges
Billable Charges

| | | |
|------------------|-----------|-----|
| Subtotal | \$1080.00 | USD |
| Discount | \$0.00 | USD |
| Surcharge | \$0.00 | USD |
| ----- | | |
| Total | \$1080.00 | USD |

Quote Confirmation page

Product Information

Click the product link to return to the Product Detail page where you can click the Order Again button to place another order or click the Return to Order Status button to access the Order Details page again.

Changing a Submitted Order Derived from a Quote

Access the Order Change page

Checkout

Order Change

Warning: Making changes to your quote can result in the entire order being re-priced.

Order Change page

Yes - Proceed

Click this button to proceed in making changes to an order that has been submitted from a quote.

Note. Making changes in an order submitted from a quote can result in the entire order being repriced.

Viewing Order or Quote Status

This section discusses how to:

- Search for orders.
- View order details.
- Search for quotes.
- View quote details.
- Convert a quote to an order.
- Track orders.

Pages Used to View Order or Quote Status

| Page Name | Object Name | Navigation | Usage |
|---------------|---------------|----------------------------------|--|
| Order Status | RE_ORD_SEARCH | Order Status. | Search for orders in the system. |
| Order Details | RE_STATUS | Order Status, Click on an Order. | View line information for orders. You can also copy this order to the shopping cart. |
| Quote Status | RE_QUO_SEARCH | Quote Status. | Search for quotes in the system. |
| Quote Details | RE_STATUS | Quote Status, Click on a Quote. | View line information for quotes. You can also convert this quote to an order. |

Searching for Orders

Access the Order Status page.

Order Status

Orders for the last 30 days are shown.
Click the order number to see order details.

Order Status Search Criteria

Order Date Between 31 And 31

[Advanced Search](#)

Orders

| Order ID | Order Date | Status | Total Price |
|-------------------------|------------|-----------|-------------|
| OC00649 | 06/04/2004 | Submitted | \$1080.00 |
| OC00648 | 06/04/2004 | Submitted | \$900.00 |
| OC00647 | 06/04/2004 | Submitted | \$1080.00 |
| OC00646 | 06/04/2004 | Submitted | \$1080.00 |
| OC00645 | 06/04/2004 | Submitted | \$5412.96 |
| OC00644 | 06/04/2004 | Submitted | \$1980.00 |
| OC00643 | 06/03/2004 | Submitted | \$89.10 |

Order Status page

Note. Either the Order Status or the Quote Status page becomes available when the Advanced Search link is clicked.

Contact Us information is associated with the business unit and can be omitted or modified (during setup) as you see fit.

Search

Click to search by date.

Advanced Search

Click the Advanced Search link to search for orders by date, order ID, customer PO, and order status.

Order Status

Search for orders using advanced search by entering one of the following order status conditions:

- Cancelled
- Complete
- Expired
- Generating

Note. This status indicates that the Business Project is in the process of creating the individual orders. Only a *master* bulk order can have this status.

- Hold
- In Fulfillment

Note. This status indicates an order that is being process to be shipped or provisioned.

- New
- Partial Hold
- Submitted

Order ID

Click the order link to access the Order Details page.

Viewing Order Details

Access the Order Details page.

Order Status

Order Details

Order ID

OC00649

Status

Submitted

Shipment

Shipping Address

Jack Pepper
 Shoreview Medical
 2455 Augustine Drive
 Santa Clara, CA 95054
 United States

Shipping Options

Shipping Method

DHL Airways

Product Information

| Product | Product ID | Qty | Units | Price |
|---|------------|-----|-------|-----------|
| Wine and Beverage Refrigerator Fashioned of rugged stainless steel, it keeps your... | D9998 | 1 | Each | \$1080.00 |

Total Charges

Billable Charges

| | | |
|--------------|------------------|------------|
| Subtotal | \$1080.00 | USD |
| Discount | \$0.00 | USD |
| Surcharge | \$0.00 | USD |
| ----- | | |
| Total | \$1080.00 | USD |

Order Details page (1 of 2)

| |
|--|
| Invoice Payment Info <div> Customer PO Payment Terms Due in 30 Days </div> |
| Billing Address Information <div> Billing Address Jack Pepper Shoreview Medical 2455 Augustine Drive Santa Clara, CA 95054 United States </div> <p>Allows you to copy this order to the shopping cart. You will still be able to add or remove products from the new order before checking out.</p> <div>Order Again</div> |

Order Details page (2 of 2)

Note. To view order details for orders that originated externally, an external link must be defined on the Order Capture Setup Workbench.

| | |
|-----------------|---|
| Order ID | Displays the PeopleSoft Order number or quote number. |
| Status | Displays the current status of the order or quote. |
| Shipment | Displays shipment information and links for tracking orders. When you click the Track Shipment link, you transfer to the shipment provider, where you can view the status of your packages. |

Note. Information is available only for orders that have a shipment and a PRO_NUMBER defined to a web site, such as for United Parcel Service (UPS) or Federal Express (FEDEX.)

| | |
|----------------|---|
| Product | Click the product link to view product details. |
|----------------|---|

Note. Depending on the fulfillment system with which your system integrates, products or packages within packages may display their statuses individually and not as a package.

| | |
|--------------------|--|
| Order Again | Click to copy this order to the shopping cart. |
|--------------------|--|

Note. Your original order does not change.

Searching for Quotes

Access the Quote Status page.

Quote Status

Quotes for the last 30 days are shown.
Click the quote number to see quote details.

Quote Status Search Criteria

Quote Date Between 05/05/2004 And

[Advanced Search](#)

| Quotes | | | | | | Find | First | 1-12 of 12 | Last |
|----------------------------|------------|-----------|-------------|----------------|-----------------|------|-------|------------|------|
| Quote ID | Quote Date | Status | Total Price | Quote Due Date | Expiration Date | | | | |
| CRQ0300086 | 06/04/2004 | Submitted | \$1377.00 | 06/19/2004 | 07/04/2004 | | | | |
| CRQ0300085 | 06/04/2004 | Submitted | \$900.00 | 06/19/2004 | 07/04/2004 | | | | |
| CRQ0300084 | 06/04/2004 | Submitted | \$5412.96 | 06/19/2004 | 07/04/2004 | | | | |
| CRQ0300083 | 06/04/2004 | Submitted | \$1080.00 | 06/19/2004 | 07/04/2004 | | | | |
| CRQ0300082 | 06/04/2004 | Submitted | \$5412.96 | 06/19/2004 | 07/04/2004 | | | | |
| CRQ0300081 | 06/04/2004 | Submitted | \$1980.00 | 06/19/2004 | 07/04/2004 | | | | |
| CRQ0300080 | 06/04/2004 | Submitted | \$1080.00 | 06/19/2004 | 07/04/2004 | | | | |
| CRQ0300079 | 06/04/2004 | Submitted | \$1080.00 | 06/19/2004 | 07/04/2004 | | | | |
| CRQ0300078 | 06/04/2004 | Submitted | \$1080.00 | 06/19/2004 | 07/04/2004 | | | | |
| CRQ0300077 | 06/04/2004 | Submitted | \$1080.00 | 06/19/2004 | 07/04/2004 | | | | |
| CRQ0300076 | 06/03/2004 | Hold | \$10825.92 | 06/18/2004 | 07/03/2004 | | | | |
| CRQ0300075 | 06/03/2004 | Submitted | \$5852.96 | 06/18/2004 | 07/03/2004 | | | | |

Quote Status page

Quote Due Date Displays the date on which the quote must be captured before the quote automatically expires.

Expiration Date Displays the date after which the quote is no longer valid.

Note. Advanced search criteria for *quote* status are slightly different from advanced search criteria for *order* status in that the criteria can entail quote due date and expiration date parameters.

Viewing Quote Details

Access the Quote Status page.

Click a quote ID link in the Quotes section to view Quote Details.

Converting a Quote to an Order

Access the Quote Details page.

Click the Submit as Order button on the Quote Details page to convert a quote to an order. You can add or remove products prior to conversion, but this causes the quote to lose its special pricing (if applied) and be repriced. Once you click the Submit as Order button, shipping and payment options are available on the checkout page and you can select shipping options, such as multiple shipments. You can also change the shipping destination, as well.

Tracking Orders

Access the Order Details page.

For a particular order, access the Order Details page from the Order Status page, then click the Order Tracking link that is a uniform resource locator (URL) to the third-party system. You can see the status of your packages. This link only appears when URL links for tracking are set up in advance.

Important! You can use the Order Status page to link to an order fulfillment system with the keys for that order. When you click the link, a fulfillment page appears that provides order status details. For example, a link to the PeopleSoft Order Management order status page provides real-time status from that particular fulfillment system.

PART 4

PeopleSoft Mobile Order Capture

Chapter 14

Understanding PeopleSoft Mobile Order Capture

Chapter 15

Setting Up PeopleSoft Mobile Order Capture

Chapter 16

Using PeopleSoft Mobile Order Capture

CHAPTER 14

Understanding PeopleSoft Mobile Order Capture

This chapter provides an overview of PeopleSoft Mobile Order Capture, and explains:

- Functionality differences with PeopleSoft Order Capture.
- Synchronization options.
- Data distribution rules.

Understanding PeopleSoft Mobile Order Capture

PeopleSoft Mobile Order Capture enables sales representatives to capture customer, product, and order or quote information in a disconnected environment. When a sales user subsequently connects to the network (on which PeopleSoft Order Capture is installed), data is synchronized, and all disconnected information can be transferred between a laptop and the PeopleSoft CRM database.

For each installation of PeopleSoft Mobile Order Capture, the application supports only one sales business unit, one Order Capture business unit, one product setID, and one Customer setID. Also, an installation of PeopleSoft Mobile Order Capture on a laptop does not have to include PeopleSoft Mobile Sales. When you use both however, they must both point to the same setID for customer and product, although business units may be different.

See Also

Chapter 1, “Getting Started with PeopleSoft Enterprise CRM Order Capture Applications,”
PeopleSoft Order Capture Applications Business Processes, page 3

Functionality Differences with PeopleSoft Order Capture

PeopleSoft Mobile Order Capture differs from PeopleSoft Order Capture in the following ways:

- You do not browse catalogs in the same way you would browse them in the online version of this application. This does not limit functionality beyond the ability to view products from within a catalog. What this means is that you can still view products; just not in a catalog-style display.
- PeopleSoft Advisor and PeopleSoft Configurator must be launched from PeopleSoft Order Capture, not PeopleSoft Mobile Order Capture. You can add order or quote lines for configured products, but the actual product configuration itself must be performed in PeopleSoft Order Capture.
- Dynamic packages are not supported. Order or quote lines for dynamic packages (also called, ?lightly configured packages?) can be added, but they must be configured within PeopleSoft Order Capture.

- PeopleSoft Mobile Order Capture allows you to view list price information when you add a product to an order, but any pricing that is applied to the order according to pricing rules are applied during the synchronization process. For practical purposes, this means that once synchronization has occurred, prices will be the true prices, including all discounts, surcharges, taxes, VAT and freight charges.
- You can only specify one Ship To location per order. In PeopleSoft Order Capture, you can ship different products to different locations.
- Tax and Freight calculations occur on the server when you synchronize the order. These charges are not calculated in a disconnected environment.
- There is no upsell or cross-sell of products within the order, although you can view these from Product Details.

Synchronization Options

You'll perform synchronization with your mobile device connected and logged in to your company network server. You can be connected directly to your local area network, through dial-up, or through the internet.

After device initialization (bootstrap synchronization), you have the following synchronization options, which are available to all PeopleSoft CRM mobile applications:

Note. These options are fully explained in the general documentation that accompanies this enhancement.

- *Upload Changes*

This allows you to send your updates to the server. Only error responses are received from the server.

Note. Full Synchronization is required to receive all server-side changes.

- *Full Synchronization*

This option provides a complete refresh of any business data that has been changed, either on the main server or the mobile device. This guarantees that both systems are synchronized.

Note. Updates are transferred to the server and error responses are received from the server. New or modified business data is received from the server.

- *Update Applications*

This option provides a complete refresh of all application and business data. All application definitions are refreshed from the server and business data is updated.

- *Last Results*

This option displays your most recent synchronization results.

See Also

PeopleSoft 8.8 CRM Mobile Applications PeopleBook

Data Distribution Rules

Mobile devices may have limited processing power, storage capacity, and display space. You can limit the range and quantity of data passed to the mobile device by specifying a data distribution method. Data distribution is unique to mobile devices. These rules are essentially tools that control the amount, type, or both, of data that is downloaded to the mobile application. These rules can limit the data to customers from a particular region, or orders within a particular time frame, for example.

Data distribution for mobile applications:

- Implements security.
- Filters the data downloaded to the mobile device.

See Also

PeopleSoft 8.8 CRM Mobile Applications PeopleBook

CHAPTER 15

Setting Up PeopleSoft Mobile Order Capture

This chapter provides an overview of mobile setup tasks, and explains how to:

- Perform an initial, bootstrap synchronization.
- Define PeopleSoft Mobile Order Capture options.

Understanding Mobile Setup

Before you can initialize and begin using your PeopleSoft CRM Mobile application, PeopleSoft Mobile Agent must be installed on your mobile device. This installation is described in the *PeopleTools Mobile Agent PeopleBook* referenced previously.

Mobile device initialization is the process by which application metadata and business data are installed to the mobile device for the first time. Although PeopleSoft Mobile Agent may be installed to the device by an Administrator, only the user of the PeopleSoft Mobile Agent (defined by user ID and user Role) can synchronize application metadata and business instance data from the server to the device.

Note. Take advantage of all PeopleSoft sources of information, including the installation guides, table-loading sequences, data models, and business process maps. A complete list of these resources appears in the preface in the PeopleSoft CRM Application Fundamentals PeopleBook, with information about where to find the most current version of each.

Performing an Initial Bootstrap Synchronization

Initializing a mobile device requires a bootstrap synchronization. The steps required for a bootstrap synchronization are as follows

1. Install the PeopleSoft Mobile Agent software to the device.
2. Perform a bootstrap synchronization.
 - a. Verify that the PSMOBILE.INI file in your WINNT folder, identifies the server you will use to transfer PeopleSoft Mobile Order Capture data between the server and the remote device when you launch the application. This URL should be identified in the SyncGateway parameter. (For example, SyncGateway=http://psuser110200/SyncServer).
 - b. Launch the PeopleSoft Mobile Agent by selecting Start, Programs, PeopleSoft Mobile Agent, Start PeopleSoft Mobile Agent. If PeopleSoft Mobile Agent is already running on the local machine, you can stop the application, by selecting Start, Programs, PeopleSoft Mobile Agent, Stop PS Mobile Agent.

- c. From the Start menu of your computer, select Start, Programs, PeopleSoft Mobile Agent, PS Mobile Application. If the device has not previously been initialized, the PeopleSoft Mobile Device Bootstrap page appears.
- d. Sign in to the application with your User ID and Password.

The userID, such as the delivered userID/password, *MOCREP/MOCREP*, identifies the appropriate application metadata (application definitions) and instance data (business data) to be downloaded to the device. When the sign on information has been entered, the synchronization begins, and the user must wait for this process to complete before launching the application. Subsequent synchronizations do not require a complete synchronization of both metadata and instance data, but only upload changes from the device to the server and reconcile changes between the device and server.

- e. Click *Synchronize*.

The PeopleSoft Mobile Synchronization Results page appears, showing the progress of your bootstrap synchronization.

When complete, check for alerts or notifications.

Both the PeopleSoft Mobile Agent and the PeopleSoft Mobile Order Capture application should now be running. You are now ready to use your PeopleSoft Mobile Order Capture application.

Note. If you make changes to the Capture Type Workbench, or the Setup Workbench in PeopleSoft Order Capture, those changes may not be reflected in PeopleSoft Mobile Order Capture. For example, if you add new order status values they will not appear in PeopleSoft Order Capture. However, any changes in the Integration Workbench or the Order Capture Business Unit component will be reflected in PeopleSoft Mobile Order Capture, if applicable.

See Also

PeopleTools PeopleBook: PeopleTools Mobile Agent

Defining PeopleSoft Mobile Order Capture Options

In this section, we explain how to:

- Define customer options.
- Define product defaults.
- Define Mobile Order Capture defaults.

Pages Used to Define PeopleSoft Mobile Order Capture Options

| Page Name | Object Name | Navigation | Usage |
|-------------------------------|-------------------|--|---|
| Mobile Customer Options | RDM_MOBILE_DFLT | Set Up CRM, Install, Mobile, Mobile Customer Options, Mobile Customer Options | Define the data distribution methods to display the Relationship Viewer and the 360 Degree View on mobile devices. |
| Mobile Product Defaults | MOC_OPTIONS_PG | Set Up CRM, Install, Mobile, Mobile Product Options, Mobile Product Defaults | Determine how attachments and images are synchronized from the product data model in the CRM database to the mobile device. |
| Mobile Order Capture Defaults | MOC_OC_OPTIONS_PG | Set Up CRM, Install, Mobile, Mobile Order Capture Options, Mobile Order Capture Defaults | Determine how attachments and images can be placed on the order itself. |

Defining Customer Options


Access the Mobile Customer Options page.

Mobile Customer Options

Mobile Customer Options:

***Description:**


Default SetID: 


Default Country: 

☒ **Show Relationship Viewer**


☒ **Spider Out To Customer**

☒ **Show 360 Degree View**

Address Purpose Type: 

Pager Purpose Type: 

Email Purpose Type: 

Phone Purpose Type: 

☒ **Bill To Customer**

☒ **Ship To Customer**

☒ **Sold To Customer**

Mobile Customer Options page (1 of 2)

| Customize Find First 1-3 of | | | | | | |
|---------------------------------|---------------------|---------------------------|------------------------|-------------------------------------|--------------------|-----------------------------|
| Role Type ID | Role | Business Object Name Type | Relationship View Name | Spider Out To Relationships | 360 View Tree Name | Three Sixty View Tab Number |
| 2 | Company | PREFERRED | CONTACT VIEW | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | MOBILETREE | 6 |
| 8 | Contact | PREFERRED | FSI CONTACT | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | MOBILETREE | 5 |
| 9 | Individual Consumer | PREFERRED | CONSUMER CONTACTS | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | MOBILETREE | 6 |

Mobile Customer Options page (2 of 2)

| | |
|---------------------------------|---|
| Default SetID | The ID for this set of options. |
| Show Relationship Viewer | Select this check box to display the Relationship Viewer on mobile devices. This field will not be enabled if the corresponding option in the Business Object Model System Options is not checked. |
| Spider Out to Customer | During a synchronization, this option controls whether the synchronization process spiders out to retrieve the full object, that is, Company, Contact, and so forth, or if only the Name is retrieved. Note. If you check this box, there may be a slight decrease in system performance. |
| Show 360 Degree View | Select this check box to display the 360 Degree View on mobile devices. This field will not be enabled if the corresponding option in the Business Object Model System Options is not checked. |
| Spider Out for 360 View | During a synchronization, as transactions are encountered this option will control whether the synchronization process will spider out to those transactions. If this option is checked, the synchronization process will spider out to send all relevant information to the Mobile Device. |
| Address Purpose Type | These are the defaults for the address contact methods that are created on the device. Delivered values are: <i>Physical Location, Business, Campus, Dormitory, Home, Legal, Mailing, and Other.</i> |
| Email Purpose Type | These are the defaults for the email contact method. Delivered values are: <i>Business, Campus, Dorm, Home and Other.</i> |
| Pager Purpose Type | These are the defaults for the pager contact method. Delivered values are: <i>Pager 1 and Pager 2.</i> |
| Phone Purpose Type | These are the defaults for the phone contact method. Delivered values are: <i>Business, Cell, Default, FAX, Home, Telex, Campus, Dormitory, main and Other.</i> |
| Bill To Customer | Select this check box if you want customers created on the mobile device to be Bill To customers. Addresses created for a Bill To customer will automatically be marked as a Bill To Address and the primary address will automatically be marked as a Primary Bill To Address. Bill To Customer means that invoices can be sent to the customer or site. |
| Ship To Customer | Select this check box if you want customers created on the mobile device to be Ship To customers. It should be noted that addresses created for such a Ship To customer will automatically be marked as a Ship To Address and the |

| | |
|--|--|
| | primary address will automatically be marked as a Primary Ship To Address. Ship To Customer means that invoices can be shipped to the customer or site. |
| Sold To Customer | Select this check box if you want customers created on the mobile device to be Sold To customers. It should be noted that addresses created for such a Sold To customer will automatically be marked as a Sold To Address and the primary address will automatically be marked as a Primary Sold To Address. Sold To Customer means that invoices can be sold to the customer or site. |
| Role Type ID | Displays the identification code associated with the business object role type. When adding a new role type, the system automatically assigns a value using automatic numbering functionality. |
| Role | Displays the role for which you want to view relationships. |
| Business Object Name Type | Displays the business object name type for which this role type is valid. |
| Relationship View Name | Select the relationship view that you want to associate with the role. |
| Spider Out to Relationships | During a synchronization, as transactions are encountered this option will control whether the sync process will spider out to the relationships. |
| <hr/> Warning! It is a requirement for PeopleSoft Mobile Order Capture that you select the check box for Company, Contact, and Individual Consumer. <hr/> | |
| 360 Degree Tree Name | The tree displays all activities and interactions for the company or contact. Plus, it can display an add and search node for the particular activity of the tree. Click the detail link to drill down to the detail pages for the activity. Click the add link to access a page where you can add the activity. Click the search link to access a page where you can search for the activity. |
| 360 Degree Tab Number | Displays the tab number of the 360 Degree View. |

See Also

PeopleSoft Enterprise CRM 8.9 Mobile Applications PeopleBook, “Getting Started with PeopleSoft Enterprise CRM Mobile Applications,” PeopleSoft Enterprise CRM Mobile Applications Implementation

Defining Product Defaults

Access the Mobile Product Defaults page.

Mobile Product Defaults

Laptop Settings

Attachments

Type: Custom Size

Size (bytes): 150

Images: Small Image

PDA Settings

Attachments

Type: No Attachments

Size (bytes):

Images: No Image

Mobile Product Defaults page

Laptop Settings

Type

Select the synchronization option for product attachments to be passed down from the database to the laptop computer. Valid values are: *All Attachments*, *Custom Size* and *No Attachments*. When you select *Custom Size*, the system enables you to limit which attachments are synchronized by attachment size.

Size (bytes)

When *Custom Size* is selected for Type, specify the maximum size in bytes of the attachments that you want to pass down from the database to the laptop computer. The system will only deliver product attachments that are less than the specified size.

Images

Select the product image that you want to pass down from the database to the laptop computer. Valid values are: *Large Image*, *Medium Image*, *No Image*, *Small Image*, and *Zoom Image*. The default is *Medium Image*.

PDA Settings

The PDA options are available for products, as sales uses them on PDA.

Defining Mobile Order Capture Defaults

Access the Mobile Order Capture Defaults page.

The screenshot displays the 'Mobile Order Capture Defaults' page. It features two main sections: 'Laptop Options' and 'PDA Options'. Each section contains an 'Attachments' sub-section with a 'Type' dropdown menu (currently set to 'No Attachments') and a 'Size (bytes)' text input field.

Mobile Order Capture Defaults page

Laptop Settings

Type

Select the synchronization option for order and quote attachments to be passed down from the database to the laptop computer. Valid values are: *All Attachments*, *Custom Size* and *No Attachments*. When you select *Custom Size*, the system enables you to limit which attachments are synchronized by attachment size.

Size (bytes)

When *Custom Size* is selected for Type, specify the maximum size in bytes of the attachments that you want to pass down from the database to the laptop computer. The system will only deliver order and quote attachments that are less than the specified size.

PDA Options

By default, PDA settings are currently unavailable for selection in PeopleSoft Mobile Order Capture.

CHAPTER 16

Using PeopleSoft Mobile Order Capture

This chapter provides an overview of PeopleSoft Mobile Order Capture options, and explains how to:

- Work with customers on the mobile device.
- Work with products on the mobile device.
- Work with orders and quotes on the mobile device.

Understanding PeopleSoft Mobile Order Capture Options

PeopleSoft CRM Mobile Order Capture enables you to view customer and product information on mobile devices for *one* predefined setID. Although business units used by PeopleSoft Mobile Order Capture and PeopleSoft Mobile Sales can be different, their business units must be related to the same setID for customers and products.

The setID for customers and products can be different

Working with Customers on the Mobile Device

Consumers and sites are not supported in PeopleSoft Mobile Order Capture. Neither can you create a new customer on your laptop and use them on an order. Customers need to have any or all of the Sold To, Bill To, and Ship To options setup by a CSR in PeopleSoft CRM before they can be used in PeopleSoft Mobile Order Capture.

See Also

PeopleSoft Enterprise CRM 8.9 Mobile Applications PeopleBook, “Working with Customer and Product Information on a Mobile Device,” Working with Companies, Consumers, Contacts, Workers and Sites

Working with Products on the Mobile Device

This section provides an overview of product data in PeopleSoft Mobile Order Capture, and explains how to view product information.

Understanding Product Data in PeopleSoft Mobile Order Capture

PeopleSoft Mobile Order Capture stores product information as follows:

- Product information is extensive, but is for information purposes only, and cannot be modified.
- Product images are optional. Product options allow you to specify whether or not to download product images, and if so, which image size to download.
- Attachments are optional, and can be controlled by file size. You control attachment size by defining the maximum file size (in bytes) that will be downloaded.
- Product information includes list price, unit of measure (UOM) and currency.

Pages Used to View Product Information

| Page Name | Object Name | Navigation | Usage |
|-----------------------------------|--------------|--|---|
| Product Definition-Details | MOC_PROD_DET | Products CRM, Product Definition Select a Product and click the Details button | View product information, such as Description and List Price. |
| Product Definition-Notes | MOC_PROD_DET | Products CRM, Product Definition, Select a Product, Details Click the Notes tab | View note information for a specific product. |
| Product Definition-Attachments | MOC_PROD_DET | Products CRM, Product Definition, Select a Product, Details Click the Attachments tab | View attachment information for a specific product. |
| Product Definition-Product Groups | MOC_PROD_DET | Products CRM, Product Definition, Select a Product, Details Click the Product Groups tab. | View product group information for a specific product. |
| Product Definition-Relationships | MOC_PROD_DET | Products CRM, Product Definition, Select a Product, Details Click the Relationships tab. | View upsell and cross-sell information for a specific product. |
| Relationship Details | MOC_PROD_DET | Products CRM, Product Definition, Select a Product, Details Click the Relationships tab, Click the Related Product button. | View detailed upsell and cross-sell relationships for a specific product. |

Viewing Products in PeopleSoft Mobile Order Capture

Access product definition pages, such as the Details page or Relationships page.

Details
Notes
Attachments
Product Groups
Relationships

Product ID: SR2010

Description: Walk-In Freezer 7ft 9in x11ft
Status: Active
Category: WALK-INS

| Currency | List Price | UOM |
|-----------|------------|------|
| US Dollar | \$6606.00 | Each |

Product Definition - Details page

Details
Notes
Attachments
Product Groups
Relationships

Product ID: SR2010

| | | | Find View All |
|--|-----------------|------------------------------|-----------------|
| | Related Product | Description | Relationship |
| | 10019 | Freezer, Shelves | Cross-Sells |
| | 10020 | Freezer Thermostat | Cross-Sells |
| | 10021 | Freezer, Light Bulb | Cross-Sells |
| | 10022 | Freezer, Compressor | Cross-Sells |
| | SR2900 | Custom Build Freezer Package | Up-Sells |

Product Definition - Relationships page

When you drill on the icon next to the Related Product, you'll view the Relationship Details page:

Relationships

Product ID: SR2010

| Related Product ID | Related Product Description | Product Relationship |
|--------------------|-----------------------------|----------------------|
| <u>10019</u> | Freezer, Shelves | Cross-Sells |

Relationship Details page

Note. Although, product relationships can be viewed from the product pages, as seen above, Upsell and Cross Sell icons will not appear on the order line, as they do in online entry.

Working with Orders and Quotes on the Mobile Device

In this section, we explain how to:

- Create new orders or quotes.
- View existing orders or quotes.

Pages Used to View or Create Orders or Quotes

| Page Name | Object Name | Navigation | Usage |
|------------------------|--------------|---|---|
| Create Order/Quote | MOC_DUMMY_PG | Orders and Quotes, Create Order/Quote. Click the Create Order button. | Use the Create Order/Quote page to create new orders or quotes. |
| Entry Form | MOC_FORM | Orders and Quotes, Create Order/Quote. Click the Create Order button, Entry Form. | Use the Entry Form page to begin creating a new order or quote, or view an existing order or quote. |
| Line Details (Summary) | MOC_FORM | Orders and Quotes, Create Order/Quote. Click the Create Order button, Entry Form, Line Details | View all order lines for this order, or add order lines to the order. |
| Line Details | MOC_FORM | Orders and Quotes, Create Order/Quote. Click the Create Order button, Entry Form, Line Details, Click the details icon for an existing line to view details, or click the <i>Add</i> button to add a new line to the order. | View all a single line's details to make edits to the line details, or to add to the order. |
| Shipping (Summary) | MOC_FORM | Orders and Quotes, Create Order/Quote. Click the Create Order button, Entry Form, and click the Shipping tab or select the Shipping link. | View a summary of Ship To information, such as <i>Customer</i> , <i>Contact</i> , and <i>Requested Date of Shipment</i> . |
| Shipments (Details) | MOC_FORM | Orders and Quotes, Create Order/Quote. Click the Create Order button, Entry Form, and click the Shipping tab or select the Shipping link and click the details button next to the Customer. | Change or view detailed shipping information. |

| Page Name | Object Name | Navigation | Usage |
|-----------------|-------------|--|--|
| Billing | MOC_FORM | Orders and Quotes, Create Order/Quote. Click the Create Order button, Entry Form, and select the Billing link. | Change or view billing information related to the order. |
| Summary | MOC_FORM | Orders and Quotes, Create Order/Quote. Click the Create Order button, Entry Form, and select the Summary link. | View a complete summary of the order or quote. |
| Holds | MOC_FORM | Orders and Quotes, Create Order/Quote. Click the Create Order button, Entry Form, and click the Holds tab. | View holds on the order. |
| Notes | MOC_FORM | Orders and Quotes, Create Order/Quote. Click the Create Order button, Entry Form, and click the Notes tab. | Add or view a note or attachment. |
| Related Objects | MOC_FORM | Orders and Quotes, Create Order/Quote. Click the Create Order button, Entry Form, and click the Related Objects tab. | View related actions. |

Creating New Orders or Quotes

Use the Entry Form page to create a new order or quote. Access the Entry Form page.

Entry Form | Line Details | Shipping | Holds | Notes | Related Objects

Entry | Shipping | Billing | Summary

Order ID: MOCREPSO002
Status: Pending
Description: MOCREPSO002
Promotion: 10%OFFSECTIONALS
Priority: Medium
***Source:** Phone
***Order Date:** 05/07/2003
Total Price: 6606.00
Currency: USD
Customer: Shoreview Medical
Contact: Pepper,Jack Joseph

Entry Form page

Note. The toolbar buttons displayed within PeopleSoft Mobile Order Capture are standard PeopleSoft Order Capture icons, and are explained in the Common Elements section of the Managing Orders and Quotes chapter of the *PeopleSoft 8.8 CRM Collaborative Selling PeopleBook*. Here the icons represent, *Save Order*, *Submit Order*, *Add Order Line*, and *Cancel Order*, respectively. Personalization of the toolbar icons is not supported in PeopleSoft Mobile Order Capture.

Order ID

The order ID initially defaults to <user id><capture type><sequence number>. For example, if your user ID is “MOCREP” and you are entering your first order, the order ID will be set to “MOCREPSO001.” If you enter your second quote, the quote ID will be “MOCREPQUO002.”

Note. The order ID will be overwritten by the server upon synchronization. For example, if you have created a mobile order with the ID of “MOCREPSO001,” it will change to a number. The format is determined by the Capture Type workbench when you next synchronize.

Status

Select from six possible delivered statuses: *Open*, *Pending*, *In Process*, *Hold*, *Complete*, or *Canceled*.

Description

Enter descriptive information here. The Order ID is the default entry.

Promotion

Select a Promotion for the line.

Priority

Enter a capture priority of *Urgent*, *High*, *Medium*, or *Low* to specify the default priority for all orders that are created in the business unit.

Source

Enter an informational code that identifies the source of the order. For example, you could specify *Phone* if you received this order by telephone.

Note. This is a required field so you must choose a value.

| | |
|--------------------|--|
| Order Date | Select the date of order entry. By default, today's date will be entered here. |
| Total Price | Displays Total price of the order appears here. |
| Currency | Currency code is selected on the Create Order/Quote page, and displays here. |
| Customer | Select the Sold To customer for this order. |
| Contact | Select the contact person for this customer. The Sold To contact will be automatically populated after selecting a Sold To customer. |

See *PeopleSoft 8.8 CRM Collaborative Selling PeopleBook*

Adding Products to the Order


Access the Line Details page.

| Line Details | | | | | |
|--------------|-------------------------------|---------|-----------|------------|--------|
| Line | Description | Product | Order Qty | Unit Price | Delete |
| 1 | Walk-In Freezer 7ft 9in x11ft | SR2010 | 1 | 6606.00 | Delete |

Add

Line Details (summary) page

Line Details displays a summary of products (or order lines) connected to this order. Click the details icon next to the line number to drill into product detail information for a specific order line. Click the *Add* button to add another product to the order. When you click the *Add* button, and choose a product, the following Line Details page appears:

| Line Details | |
|--|--|
| Line: | 1 |
| Status: | Open |
| Product: | SR2010 |
| Description: | Walk-In Freezer 7ft 9in x1' |
| *Unit of Measure: | Each  |
| List Price: | 6606.00 |
| Currency: | USD |
| Order Qty: | 1.0000 |
| Unit Price: | 6606.00 |
| Promotion: | 10%OFFSECTIONALS  |
| Minimum Price: | 0.00 |
| Recurring Price: | 0.00 |
| Recurring Frequency: | |
| Total Price: | 6606.00 |
| <input type="button" value="Save"/> <input type="button" value="Cancel"/> Return to List Go Back | |

Line Details page

The Line Details page indicates the list price and total price for the line. If the order has been synchronized, the price is the final price that includes all surcharges or discounts set up in pricing. Any special pricing is applied when synchronizing the order with the server.

Unit of Measure

Select the unit of measure for this product.

List Price

List price displays from the product definition, and is the price before the application of any price adjustments, such as discounts or surcharges.

Order Qty

Enter the quantity of product for this order line.

Unit Price

Unit price is the price of the product after pricing adjustments are applied (by the pricing engine).

Note. For PeopleSoft Mobile Order Capture, pricing adjustments are only applied once the order has been synchronized with the main application.

Promotion

Select a promotion code from the lookup.

Minimum Price

Minimum price is determined by product setup. If you enter a unit price that is below the minimum price on the line, and then attempt to submit the order, a hold is generated at synchronization, and the order cannot continue without a manual override.

Recurring Price

If this product has a recurring price, that recurring price amount appears here. You combine the recurring price with recurring frequency to arrive at a price. This could be, for example, a price that repeats each month, or a charge that occurs each year.

Recurring Frequency

As opposed to one time charges, these charges indicate charges that occur with varying frequency, such as *weekly*, *monthly*, or *annual* charges.

| | |
|--------------------|---|
| Total Price | This is the total price of this order line. |
| Save | Click the <i>Save</i> button to add this line to the order. |

Note. You can order configured products and dynamic packages, but you cannot configure them on the mobile device. If the user orders one or more of these products and submits the order, it will be placed on hold at synchronization time. The Customer Service Representative (CSR) must configure these products from within PeopleSoft Order Capture. You can also exclude these products from being passed to the mobile device by enforcing the appropriate data distribution rules.

Changing or Viewing Shipping Information

Access the Shipping page to view a summary of shipment information. Click the details icon next to a specific customer to access the Shipping (details) page and enter or change shipping information:

| | | | | | |
|---|---------------------|-----------------------|-------|-------|-----------------|
| Entry Form | Line Details | Shipping | Holds | Notes | Related Objects |
| Shipping | | | | | Find View All |
| Customer | Contact | Requested Date | | | |
| Shoreview Medical | Pepper, Jack Joseph | 05/28/2003 | | | |
| <input type="button" value="Save"/> <input type="button" value="Return to List"/> | | | | | |

Shipping (summary) page

Shipments

Customer: Shoreview Medical
Contact: Pepper, Jack Joseph
Address: 2455 Augustine Drive, Santa Clara, CA, 95054, USA
Carrier: UPS
Requested Date: 05/28/2003
Description:

| Line Detail | | | | | |
|-------------|-------------------------------|---------|------|-----------|------------|
| Line | Product Description | Product | UOM | Order Qty | List Price |
| 1 | Walk-In Freezer 7ft 9in x11ft | SR2010 | Each | 1.0000 | \$6606.00 |

Shipments (details) page

| | |
|--------------------------|---|
| Customer, Contact | Change the customer and contact information by clicking the <i>Search</i> button and making a different selection. |
| Address | The address where the shipment is delivered. This address defaults primary shipping contact (and primary shipping address for the customer) from the customer data model. |
| Carrier | Select a carrier for this shipment by clicking the <i>Search</i> button, and making a selection. |

| | |
|-----------------------|---|
| Requested Date | Enter a requested arrival date for the shipment here. Note that you can specify a future shipment date. |
| Description | Enter any additional shipment information in this field. |

Note. Mobile orders are restricted to a single shipment. However, if this order or quote was created in PeopleSoft Order Capture and is shipping to multiple locations, all of those locations will be displayed here. .

The Line Detail grid displays the order lines associated with each ship-to location.

Changing or Viewing Billing Information

Access the Billing page:

Entry Form

Line Details

Shipping

Holds

Notes

Related Objects

Entry

Shipping

Billing

Summary

Order ID:

MOCREPS0002

Status:

Pending

Total Price:

6606.00

Customer:

Shoreview Medical

Search

Contact:

Pepper,Jack Joseph

Search

Address:

2455 Augustine Drive,Santa Clara,CA,95054,USA

Search

PO Number:

PO Received:

☐

Payment Terms:

Billing page

We have previously explained fields that appear on the Billing page, with the exception of the following:

| | |
|--------------------------|---|
| Customer, Contact | Customer and Contact displayed here are the Bill To equivalents, although they are not necessarily the same ones as those that are on the Shipping or Entry Form pages. |
| Address | This address is the billing address. By default, the primary billing contact and the primary billing address are populated from the customer data model. |
| PO Number | Enter the Purchase Order number, if applicable. |
| PO Received | Select this check box if a Purchase Order has been received. |

Note. This functionality is designed solely for auditing purposes. There is no attached business logic.

| | |
|----------------------|---|
| Payment Terms | Select terms of payment, such as <i>Due Immediately</i> . |
|----------------------|---|

Managing Holds

Holds appear on the Holds page. You cannot remove holds in PeopleSoft Mobile Order Capture, you can only view them. Held orders are maintainable; thus you can correct the problems caused by certain holds from the main PeopleSoft Order Capture application. For example, if the order is held because an invalid Bill To customer was specified on the order (or no Bill To customer was specified at all), the user can change the Bill To customer and perform a synchronization. The hold is then lifted.

Adding Notes

Access the Notes summary page, and then click on the details icon to drill into Notes details.

Notes

Added By: MOCREP **Datetime Added:** 05/07/2003 9:35 AM

***Summary:** This is a priority order. Ship ASAP.

Details: Make sure that this order is confirmed via phone to Jack Pepper.

Related Line:

| Attachments |
|-------------|
| Description |
| Add |

Notes (Detail) page

Viewing Related Actions

View related actions on this page. A related object is data, such as a business project, that is somehow related to the order or quote. If the data exists on the mobile device, you will have the option to link to that data. For example, if there is an sales opportunity associated with this order and it exists on the mobile device, you will be able to transfer to that opportunity from here.

Understanding Third Party and Miscellaneous Calculations

These following third party and miscellaneous charges may be applied to the order during synchronization:

- Pricing discounts, surcharges, or both.
- Freight.
- Tax.
- VAT.
- Product giveaways.

Viewing Existing Orders or Quotes

You may view existing orders or quotes by using the Search Orders and Quotes menu option. The pages will be the same as above. Only quotes, unsubmitted orders, and orders that are on hold can be modified.

APPENDIX A

ISO Country and Currency Codes

PeopleBooks use International Organization for Standardization (ISO) country and currency codes to identify country-specific information and monetary amounts.

This appendix discusses:

- ISO country codes.
- ISO currency codes.

See Also

“About This PeopleBook,” Typographical Conventions and Visual Cues

ISO Country Codes

This table lists the ISO country codes that may appear as country identifiers in PeopleBooks:

| ISO Country Code | Country Name |
|------------------|----------------------|
| ABW | Aruba |
| AFG | Afghanistan |
| AGO | Angola |
| AIA | Anguilla |
| ALB | Albania |
| AND | Andorra |
| ANT | Netherlands Antilles |
| ARE | United Arab Emirates |
| ARG | Argentina |
| ARM | Armenia |
| ASM | American Samoa |
| ATA | Antarctica |

| ISO Country Code | Country Name |
|------------------|-----------------------------|
| ATF | French Southern Territories |
| ATG | Antigua and Barbuda |
| AUS | Australia |
| AUT | Austria |
| AZE | Azerbaijan |
| BDI | Burundi |
| BEL | Belgium |
| BEN | Benin |
| BFA | Burkina Faso |
| BGD | Bangladesh |
| BGR | Bulgaria |
| BHR | Bahrain |
| BHS | Bahamas |
| BIH | Bosnia and Herzegovina |
| BLR | Belarus |
| BLZ | Belize |
| BMU | Bermuda |
| BOL | Bolivia |
| BRA | Brazil |
| BRB | Barbados |
| BRN | Brunei Darussalam |
| BTN | Bhutan |
| BVT | Bouvet Island |
| BWA | Botswana |
| CAF | Central African Republic |
| CAN | Canada |
| CCK | Cocos (Keeling) Islands |

| ISO Country Code | Country Name |
|------------------|--------------------------------|
| CHE | Switzerland |
| CHL | Chile |
| CHN | China |
| CIV | Cote D'Ivoire |
| CMR | Cameroon |
| COD | Congo, The Democratic Republic |
| COG | Congo |
| COK | Cook Islands |
| COL | Colombia |
| COM | Comoros |
| CPV | Cape Verde |
| CRI | Costa Rica |
| CUB | Cuba |
| CXR | Christmas Island |
| CYM | Cayman Islands |
| CYP | Cyprus |
| CZE | Czech Republic |
| DEU | Germany |
| DJI | Djibouti |
| DMA | Dominica |
| DNK | Denmark |
| DOM | Dominican Republic |
| DZA | Algeria |
| ECU | Ecuador |
| EGY | Egypt |
| ERI | Eritrea |
| ESH | Western Sahara |

| ISO Country Code | Country Name |
|------------------|------------------------------|
| ESP | Spain |
| EST | Estonia |
| ETH | Ethiopia |
| FIN | Finland |
| FJI | Fiji |
| FLK | Falkland Islands (Malvinas) |
| FRA | France |
| FRO | Faroe Islands |
| FSM | Micronesia, Federated States |
| GAB | Gabon |
| GBR | United Kingdom |
| GEO | Georgia |
| GHA | Ghana |
| GIB | Gibraltar |
| GIN | Guinea |
| GLP | Guadeloupe |
| GMB | Gambia |
| GNB | Guinea-Bissau |
| GNQ | Equatorial Guinea |
| GRC | Greece |
| GRD | Grenada |
| GRL | Greenland |
| GTM | Guatemala |
| GUF | French Guiana |
| GUM | Guam |
| GUY | Guyana |
| GXA | GXA - GP Core Country |

| ISO Country Code | Country Name |
|------------------|--------------------------------|
| GXB | GXB - GP Core Country |
| GXC | GXC - GP Core Country |
| GXD | GXD - GP Core Country |
| HKG | Hong Kong |
| HMD | Heard and McDonald Islands |
| HND | Honduras |
| HRV | Croatia |
| HTI | Haiti |
| HUN | Hungary |
| IDN | Indonesia |
| IND | India |
| IOT | British Indian Ocean Territory |
| IRL | Ireland |
| IRN | Iran (Islamic Republic Of) |
| IRQ | Iraq |
| ISL | Iceland |
| ISR | Israel |
| ITA | Italy |
| JAM | Jamaica |
| JOR | Jordan |
| JPN | Japan |
| KAZ | Kazakstan |
| KEN | Kenya |
| KGZ | Kyrgyzstan |
| KHM | Cambodia |
| KIR | Kiribati |
| KNA | Saint Kitts and Nevis |

| ISO Country Code | Country Name |
|------------------|-------------------------------|
| KOR | Korea, Republic of |
| KWT | Kuwait |
| LAO | Lao People's Democratic Rep |
| LBN | Lebanon |
| LBR | Liberia |
| LBY | Libyan Arab Jamahiriya |
| LCA | Saint Lucia |
| LIE | Liechtenstein |
| LKA | Sri Lanka |
| LSO | Lesotho |
| LTU | Lithuania |
| LUX | Luxembourg |
| LVA | Latvia |
| MAC | Macao |
| MAR | Morocco |
| MCO | Monaco |
| MDA | Moldova, Republic of |
| MDG | Madagascar |
| MDV | Maldives |
| MEX | Mexico |
| MHL | Marshall Islands |
| MKD | Fmr Yugoslav Rep of Macedonia |
| MLI | Mali |
| MLT | Malta |
| MMR | Myanmar |
| MNG | Mongolia |
| MNP | Northern Mariana Islands |

| ISO Country Code | Country Name |
|------------------|----------------|
| MOZ | Mozambique |
| MRT | Mauritania |
| MSR | Montserrat |
| MTQ | Martinique |
| MUS | Mauritius |
| MWI | Malawi |
| MYS | Malaysia |
| MYT | Mayotte |
| NAM | Namibia |
| NCL | New Caledonia |
| NER | Niger |
| NFK | Norfolk Island |
| NGA | Nigeria |
| NIC | Nicaragua |
| NIU | Niue |
| NLD | Netherlands |
| NOR | Norway |
| NPL | Nepal |
| NRU | Nauru |
| NZL | New Zealand |
| OMN | Oman |
| PAK | Pakistan |
| PAN | Panama |
| PCN | Pitcairn |
| PER | Peru |
| PHL | Philippines |
| PLW | Palau |

| ISO Country Code | Country Name |
|------------------|--------------------------------|
| PNG | Papua New Guinea |
| POL | Poland |
| PRI | Puerto Rico |
| PRK | Korea, Democratic People's Rep |
| PRT | Portugal |
| PRY | Paraguay |
| PSE | Palestinian Territory, Occupie |
| PYF | French Polynesia |
| QAT | Qatar |
| REU | Reunion |
| ROU | Romania |
| RUS | Russian Federation |
| RWA | Rwanda |
| SAU | Saudi Arabia |
| SDN | Sudan |
| SEN | Senegal |
| SGP | Singapore |
| SGS | Sth Georgia & Sth Sandwich Is |
| SHN | Saint Helena |
| SJM | Svalbard and Jan Mayen |
| SLB | Solomon Islands |
| SLE | Sierra Leone |
| SLV | El Salvador |
| SMR | San Marino |
| SOM | Somalia |
| SPM | Saint Pierre and Miquelon |
| STP | Sao Tome and Principe |

| ISO Country Code | Country Name |
|------------------|------------------------------|
| SUR | Suriname |
| SVK | Slovakia |
| SVN | Slovenia |
| SWE | Sweden |
| SWZ | Swaziland |
| SYC | Seychelles |
| SYR | Syrian Arab Republic |
| TCA | Turks and Caicos Islands |
| TCD | Chad |
| TGO | Togo |
| THA | Thailand |
| TJK | Tajikistan |
| TKL | Tokelau |
| TKM | Turkmenistan |
| TLS | East Timor |
| TON | Tonga |
| TTO | Trinidad and Tobago |
| TUN | Tunisia |
| TUR | Turkey |
| TUV | Tuvalu |
| TWN | Taiwan, Province of China |
| TZA | Tanzania, United Republic of |
| UGA | Uganda |
| UKR | Ukraine |
| UMI | US Minor Outlying Islands |
| URY | Uruguay |
| USA | United States |

| ISO Country Code | Country Name |
|------------------|-------------------------------|
| UZB | Uzbekistan |
| VAT | Holy See (Vatican City State) |
| VCT | St Vincent and the Grenadines |
| VEN | Venezuela |
| VGB | Virgin Islands (British) |
| VIR | Virgin Islands (U.S.) |
| VNM | Viet Nam |
| VUT | Vanuatu |
| WLF | Wallis and Futuna Islands |
| WSM | Samoa |
| YEM | Yemen |
| YUG | Yugoslavia |
| ZAF | South Africa |
| ZMB | Zambia |
| ZWE | Zimbabwe |

ISO Currency Codes

This table lists the ISO country codes that may appear as currency identifiers in PeopleBooks:

| ISO Currency Code | Description |
|-------------------|-----------------------------|
| ADP | Andorran Peseta |
| AED | United Arab Emirates Dirham |
| AFA | Afghani |
| AFN | Afghani |
| ALK | Old Lek |
| ALL | Lek |
| AMD | Armenian Dram |

| ISO Currency Code | Description |
|-------------------|------------------------------|
| ANG | Netherlands Antilles Guilder |
| AOA | Kwanza |
| AOK | Kwanza |
| AON | New Kwanza |
| AOR | Kwanza Reajustado |
| ARA | Austral |
| ARP | Peso Argentino |
| ARS | Argentine Peso |
| ARY | Peso |
| ATS | Schilling |
| AUD | Australian Dollar |
| AWG | Aruban Guilder |
| AZM | Azerbaijani Manat |
| BAD | Dinar |
| BAM | Convertible Marks |
| BBD | Barbados Dollar |
| BDT | Taka |
| BEC | Convertible Franc |
| BEF | Belgian Franc |
| BEL | Financial Belgian Franc |
| BGJ | Lev A/52 |
| BGK | Lev A/62 |
| BGL | Lev |
| BGN | Bulgarian LEV |
| BHD | Bahraini Dinar |
| BIF | Burundi Franc |
| BMD | Bermudian Dollar |

| ISO Currency Code | Description |
|-------------------|-----------------------|
| BND | Brunei Dollar |
| BOB | Boliviano |
| BOP | Peso |
| BOV | Mvdol |
| BRB | Cruzeiro |
| BRC | Cruzado |
| BRE | Cruzeiro |
| BRL | Brazilian Real |
| BRN | New Cruzado |
| BRR | Brazilian Real Dollar |
| BSD | Bahamian Dollar |
| BTN | Ngultrum |
| BUK | N/A |
| BWP | Pula |
| BYB | Belarussian Ruble |
| BYR | Belarussian Ruble |
| BZD | Belize Dollar |
| CAD | Canadian Dollar |
| CDF | Franc Congolais |
| CHF | Swiss Franc |
| CLF | Unidades de fomento |
| CLP | Chilean Peso |
| CNX | Peoples Bank Dollar |
| CNY | Yuan Renminbi |
| COP | Colombian Peso |
| CRC | Costa Rican Colon |
| CSD | Serbia Dinar |

| ISO Currency Code | Description |
|-------------------|----------------------|
| CSJ | Krona A/53 |
| CSK | Koruna |
| CUP | Cuban Peso |
| CVE | Cape Verde Escudo |
| CYP | Cyprus Pound |
| CZK | Czech Koruna |
| DEM | Deutsche Mark |
| DJF | Djibouti Franc |
| DKK | Danish Krone |
| DOP | Dominican Peso |
| DZD | Algerian Dinar |
| ECS | Sucre |
| ECV | Unidad de Valor |
| EEK | Kroon |
| EGP | Egyptian Pound |
| EQE | Ekwele |
| ERN | Nakfa |
| ESA | Spanish Peseta |
| ESB | Convertible Peseta |
| ESP | Spanish Peseta |
| ETB | Ethiopian Birr |
| EUR | euro |
| FIM | Markka |
| FJD | Fiji Dollar |
| FKP | Falklands Isl. Pound |
| FRF | French Franc |
| GBP | Pound Sterling |

| ISO Currency Code | Description |
|-------------------|--------------------|
| GEK | Georgian Coupon |
| GEL | Lari |
| GHC | Cedi |
| GIP | Gibraltar Pound |
| GMD | Dalasi |
| GNE | Syli |
| GNF | Guinea Franc |
| GNS | Syli |
| GQE | Ekwele |
| GRD | Drachma |
| GTQ | Quetzal |
| GWE | Guinea Escudo |
| GWP | Guinea-Bissau Peso |
| GYD | Guyana Dollar |
| HKD | Hong Kong Dollar |
| HNL | Lempira |
| HRD | Dinar |
| HRK | Kuna |
| HTG | Gourde |
| HUF | Forint |
| IDR | Rupiah |
| IEP | Irish Pound |
| ILP | Pound |
| ILR | Old Shekel |
| ILS | New Israeli Sheqel |
| INR | Indian Rupee |
| IQD | Iraqi Dinar |

| ISO Currency Code | Description |
|-------------------|-----------------------|
| IRR | Iranian Rial |
| ISJ | Old Krona |
| ISK | Iceland Krona |
| ITL | Italian Lira |
| JMD | Jamaican Dollar |
| JOD | Jordanian Dinar |
| JPY | Yen |
| KES | Kenyan Shilling |
| KGS | Som |
| KHR | Riel |
| KMF | Comoro Franc |
| KPW | North Korean Won |
| KRW | Won |
| KWD | Kuwaiti Dinar |
| KYD | Cayman Islands dollar |
| KZT | Tenge |
| LAJ | Kip Pot Pol |
| LAK | Kip |
| LBP | Lebanese Pound |
| LKR | Sri Lanka Rupee |
| LRD | Liberian Dollar |
| LSL | Loti |
| LSM | Maloti |
| LTL | Lithuanian Litas |
| LTT | Talonas |
| LUC | Convertib Franc |
| LUF | Luxembourg Franc |

| ISO Currency Code | Description |
|-------------------|-------------------|
| LUL | Financial Franc |
| LVL | Latvian Lats |
| LVR | Latvian Ruble |
| LYD | Libyan Dinar |
| MAD | Moroccan Dirham |
| MAF | Mali Franc |
| MDL | Moldovan Leu |
| MGF | Malagasy Franc |
| MKD | Denar |
| MLF | Mali Franc |
| MMK | Kyat |
| MNT | Tugrik |
| MOP | Pataca |
| MRO | Ouguiya |
| MTL | Maltese Lira |
| MTP | Maltese Pound |
| MUR | Mauritius Rupee |
| MVQ | Maldiva Rupee |
| MVR | Rufiyaa |
| MWK | Malawian Kwacha |
| MXN | Mexican Peso |
| MXP | Mexican Peso |
| MXV | Mexican UDI |
| MYR | Malaysian Ringgit |
| MZE | Mozambique Escudo |
| MZM | Metical |
| NAD | Namibia Dollar |

| ISO Currency Code | Description |
|-------------------|---------------------------|
| NGN | Naira |
| NIC | Cordoba |
| NIO | Cordoba Oro |
| NLG | Netherlands Guilder |
| NOK | Norwegian Krone |
| NPR | Nepalese Rupee |
| NZD | New Zealand Dollar |
| OMR | Rial Omani |
| PAB | Balboa |
| PEI | Inti |
| PEN | Nuevo Sol |
| PES | Sol |
| PGK | Kina |
| PHP | Philippine Peso |
| PKR | Pakistan Rupee |
| PLN | Zloty |
| PLZ | Zloty |
| PTE | Portuguese Escudo |
| PYG | Guarani |
| QAR | Qatari Rial |
| ROK | Leu A/52 |
| ROL | Leu |
| RUB | Russian Ruble |
| RUR | Russian Federation Rouble |
| RWF | Rwanda Franc |
| SAR | Saudi Riyal |
| SBD | Solomon Islands |

| ISO Currency Code | Description |
|-------------------|--------------------|
| SCR | Seychelles Rupee |
| SDD | Sudanese Dinar |
| SDP | Sudanese Pound |
| SEK | Swedish Krona |
| SGD | Singapore Dollar |
| SHP | St Helena Pound |
| SIT | Tolar |
| SKK | Slovak Koruna |
| SLL | Leone |
| SOS | Somali Shilling |
| SRG | Surinam Guilder |
| STD | Dobra |
| SUR | Rouble |
| SVC | El Salvador Colon |
| SYP | Syrian Pound |
| SZL | Lilangeni |
| THB | Baht |
| TJR | Tajik Ruble |
| TJS | Somoni |
| TMM | Manat |
| TND | Tunisian Dinar |
| TOP | Pa'anga |
| TPE | Timor Escudo |
| TRL | Turkish Lira |
| TTD | Trinidad Dollar |
| TWD | New Taiwan Dollar |
| TZS | Tanzanian Shilling |

| ISO Currency Code | Description |
|-------------------|-----------------------------|
| UAH | Hryvnia |
| UAK | Karbovanet |
| UGS | Uganda Shilling |
| UGW | Old Shilling |
| UGX | Uganda Shilling |
| USD | US Dollar |
| USN | US Dollar (Next day) |
| USS | US Dollar (Same day) |
| UYN | Old Uruguay Peso |
| UYP | Uruguayan Peso |
| UYU | Peso Uruguayo |
| UZS | Uzbekistan Sum |
| VEB | Bolivar |
| VNC | Old Dong |
| VND | Dong |
| VUV | Vatu |
| WST | Tala |
| XAF | CFA Franc BEAC |
| XAG | Silver |
| XAU | GOLD |
| XBA | European Composite Unit |
| XBB | European Monetary Unit |
| XBC | European Unit of Account 9 |
| XBD | European Unit of Account 17 |
| XCD | East Caribbean Dollar |
| XDR | SDR |
| XEU | EU Currency (E.C.U) |

| ISO Currency Code | Description |
|-------------------|--------------------------|
| XFO | Gold-Franc |
| XFU | UIC-Franc |
| XOF | CFA Franc BCEAO |
| XPD | Palladium |
| XPF | CFP Franc |
| XPT | Platinum |
| XTS | For Testing Purposes |
| XXX | Non Currency Transaction |
| YDD | Yemeni Din |
| YER | Yemeni Rial |
| YUD | New Yugoslavian Dinar |
| YUM | New Dinar |
| YUN | Yugoslavian Dinar |
| ZAL | Financial Rand |
| ZAR | Rand |
| ZMK | Zambian Kwacha |
| ZRN | New Zaire |
| ZRZ | Zaire |
| ZWC | Rhodesian Dollar |
| ZWD | Zimbabwe Dollar |

Glossary of PeopleSoft Terms

| | |
|----------------------------|---|
| absence entitlement | This element defines rules for granting paid time off for valid absences, such as sick time, vacation, and maternity leave. An absence entitlement element defines the entitlement amount, frequency, and entitlement period. |
| absence take | This element defines the conditions that must be met before a payee is entitled to take paid time off. |
| accounting class | In PeopleSoft Enterprise Performance Management, the accounting class defines how a resource is treated for generally accepted accounting practices. The Inventory class indicates whether a resource becomes part of a balance sheet account, such as inventory or fixed assets, while the Non-inventory class indicates that the resource is treated as an expense of the period during which it occurs. |
| accounting date | The accounting date indicates when a transaction is recognized, as opposed to the date the transaction actually occurred. The accounting date and transaction date can be the same. The accounting date determines the period in the general ledger to which the transaction is to be posted. You can only select an accounting date that falls within an open period in the ledger to which you are posting. The accounting date for an item is normally the invoice date. |
| accounting split | The accounting split method indicates how expenses are allocated or divided among one or more sets of accounting ChartFields. |
| accumulator | You use an accumulator to store cumulative values of defined items as they are processed. You can accumulate a single value over time or multiple values over time. For example, an accumulator could consist of all voluntary deductions, or all company deductions, enabling you to accumulate amounts. It allows total flexibility for time periods and values accumulated. |
| action reason | The reason an employee's job or employment information is updated. The action reason is entered in two parts: a personnel action, such as a promotion, termination, or change from one pay group to another—and a reason for that action. Action reasons are used by PeopleSoft Human Resources, PeopleSoft Benefits Administration, PeopleSoft Stock Administration, and the COBRA Administration feature of the Base Benefits business process. |
| action template | In PeopleSoft Receivables, outlines a set of escalating actions that the system or user performs based on the period of time that a customer or item has been in an action plan for a specific condition. |
| activity | <p>In PeopleSoft Enterprise Learning Management, an instance of a catalog item (sometimes called a class) that is available for enrollment. The activity defines such things as the costs that are associated with the offering, enrollment limits and deadlines, and waitlisting capacities.</p> <p>In PeopleSoft Enterprise Performance Management, the work of an organization and the aggregation of actions that are used for activity-based costing.</p> <p>In PeopleSoft Project Costing, the unit of work that provides a further breakdown of projects—usually into specific tasks.</p> <p>In PeopleSoft Workflow, a specific transaction that you might need to perform in a business process. Because it consists of the steps that are used to perform a transaction, it is also known as a step map.</p> |

| | |
|-------------------------------|--|
| agreement | In PeopleSoft eSettlements, provides a way to group and specify processing options, such as payment terms, pay from a bank, and notifications by a buyer and supplier location combination. |
| allocation rule | In PeopleSoft Enterprise Incentive Management, an expression within compensation plans that enables the system to assign transactions to nodes and participants. During transaction allocation, the allocation engine traverses the compensation structure from the current node to the root node, checking each node for plans that contain allocation rules. |
| alternate account | A feature in PeopleSoft General Ledger that enables you to create a statutory chart of accounts and enter statutory account transactions at the detail transaction level, as required for recording and reporting by some national governments. |
| AR specialist | Abbreviation for <i>receivables specialist</i> . In PeopleSoft Receivables, an individual in who tracks and resolves deductions and disputed items. |
| arbitration plan | In PeopleSoft Enterprise Pricer, defines how price rules are to be applied to the base price when the transaction is priced. |
| assessment rule | In PeopleSoft Receivables, a user-defined rule that the system uses to evaluate the condition of a customer's account or of individual items to determine whether to generate a follow-up action. |
| asset class | An asset group used for reporting purposes. It can be used in conjunction with the asset category to refine asset classification. |
| attribute/value pair | In PeopleSoft Directory Interface, relates the data that makes up an entry in the directory information tree. |
| authentication server | A server that is set up to verify users of the system. |
| base time period | In PeopleSoft Business Planning, the lowest level time period in a calendar. |
| benchmark job | In PeopleSoft Workforce Analytics, a benchmark job is a job code for which there is corresponding salary survey data from published, third-party sources. |
| book | In PeopleSoft Asset Management, used for storing financial and tax information, such as costs, depreciation attributes, and retirement information on assets. |
| branch | A tree node that rolls up to nodes above it in the hierarchy, as defined in PeopleSoft Tree Manager. |
| budgetary account only | An account used by the system only and not by users; this type of account does not accept transactions. You can only budget with this account. Formerly called "system-maintained account." |
| budget check | In commitment control, the processing of source transactions against control budget ledgers, to see if they pass, fail, or pass with a warning. |
| budget control | In commitment control, budget control ensures that commitments and expenditures don't exceed budgets. It enables you to track transactions against corresponding budgets and terminate a document's cycle if the defined budget conditions are not met. For example, you can prevent a purchase order from being dispatched to a vendor if there are insufficient funds in the related budget to support it. |
| budget period | The interval of time (such as 12 months or 4 quarters) into which a period is divided for budgetary and reporting purposes. The ChartField allows maximum flexibility to define operational accounting time periods without restriction to only one calendar. |
| business event | In PeopleSoft Receivables, defines the processing characteristics for the Receivable Update process for a draft activity. |

| | |
|------------------------------------|--|
| | In PeopleSoft Sales Incentive Management, an original business transaction or activity that may justify the creation of a PeopleSoft Enterprise Incentive Management event (a sale, for example). |
| business unit | A corporation or a subset of a corporation that is independent with regard to one or more operational or accounting functions. |
| buyer | In PeopleSoft eSettlements, an organization (or business unit, as opposed to an individual) that transacts with suppliers (vendors) within the system. A buyer creates payments for purchases that are made in the system. |
| catalog item | In PeopleSoft Enterprise Learning Management, a specific topic that a learner can study and have tracked. For example, "Introduction to Microsoft Word." A catalog item contains general information about the topic and includes a course code, description, categorization, keywords, and delivery methods. A catalog item can have one or more learning activities. |
| catalog map | In PeopleSoft Catalog Management, translates values from the catalog source data to the format of the company's catalog. |
| catalog partner | In PeopleSoft Catalog Management, shares responsibility with the enterprise catalog manager for maintaining catalog content. |
| categorization | Associates partner offerings with catalog offerings and groups them into enterprise catalog categories. |
| channel | In PeopleSoft MultiChannel Framework, email, chat, voice (computer telephone integration [CTI]), or a generic event. |
| ChartField | A field that stores a chart of accounts, resources, and so on, depending on the PeopleSoft application. ChartField values represent individual account numbers, department codes, and so forth. |
| ChartField balancing | You can require specific ChartFields to match up (balance) on the debit and the credit side of a transaction. |
| ChartField combination edit | The process of editing journal lines for valid ChartField combinations based on user-defined rules. |
| ChartKey | One or more fields that uniquely identify each row in a table. Some tables contain only one field as the key, while others require a combination. |
| checkbook | In PeopleSoft Promotions Management, enables you to view financial data (such as planned, incurred, and actual amounts) that is related to funds and trade promotions. |
| Class ChartField | A ChartField value that identifies a unique appropriation budget key when you combine it with a fund, department ID, and program code, as well as a budget period. Formerly called <i>sub-classification</i> . |
| clone | In PeopleCode, to make a unique copy. In contrast, to <i>copy</i> may mean making a new reference to an object, so if the underlying object is changed, both the copy and the original change. |
| collection | To make a set of documents available for searching in Verity, you must first create at least one collection. A collection is set of directories and files that allow search application users to use the Verity search engine to quickly find and display source documents that match search criteria. A collection is a set of statistics and pointers to the source documents, stored in a proprietary format on a file server. Because a collection can only store information for a single location, PeopleSoft maintains a set of collections (one per language code) for each search index object. |

| | |
|--|---|
| collection rule | In PeopleSoft Receivables, a user-defined rule that defines actions to take for a customer based on both the amount and the number of days past due for outstanding balances. |
| compensation object | In PeopleSoft Enterprise Incentive Management, a node within a compensation structure. Compensation objects are the building blocks that make up a compensation structure's hierarchical representation. |
| compensation structure | In PeopleSoft Enterprise Incentive Management, a hierarchical relationship of compensation objects that represents the compensation-related relationship between the objects. |
| condition | In PeopleSoft Receivables, occurs when there is a change of status for a customer's account, such as reaching a credit limit or exceeding a user-defined balance due. |
| configuration parameter catalog | Used to configure an external system with PeopleSoft. For example, a configuration parameter catalog might set up configuration and communication parameters for an external server. |
| configuration plan | In PeopleSoft Enterprise Incentive Management, configuration plans hold allocation information for common variables (not incentive rules) and are attached to a node without a participant. Configuration plans are not processed by transactions. |
| content reference | Content references are pointers to content registered in the portal registry. These are typically either URLs or iScripts. Content references fall into three categories: target content, templates, and template pagelets. |
| context | <p>In PeopleCode, determines which buffer fields can be contextually referenced and which is the current row of data on each scroll level when a PeopleCode program is running.</p> <p>In PeopleSoft Enterprise Incentive Management, a mechanism that is used to determine the scope of a processing run. PeopleSoft Enterprise Incentive Management uses three types of context: plan, period, and run-level.</p> |
| control table | Stores information that controls the processing of an application. This type of processing might be consistent throughout an organization, or it might be used only by portions of the organization for more limited sharing of data. |
| cost profile | A combination of a receipt cost method, a cost flow, and a deplete cost method. A profile is associated with a cost book and determines how items in that book are valued, as well as how the material movement of the item is valued for the book. |
| cost row | A cost transaction and amount for a set of ChartFields. |
| current learning | In PeopleSoft Enterprise Learning Management, a self-service repository for all of a learner's in-progress learning activities and programs. |
| data acquisition | In PeopleSoft Enterprise Incentive Management, the process during which raw business transactions are acquired from external source systems and fed into the operational data store (ODS). |
| data elements | <p>Data elements, at their simplest level, define a subset of data and the rules by which to group them.</p> <p>For Workforce Analytics, data elements are rules that tell the system what measures to retrieve about your workforce groups.</p> |
| dataset | A data grouping that enables role-based filtering and distribution of data. You can limit the range and quantity of data that is displayed for a user by associating dataset rules with user roles. The result of dataset rules is a set of data that is appropriate for the user's roles. |

| | |
|-----------------------------------|--|
| delivery method | <p>In PeopleSoft Enterprise Learning Management, identifies the primary type of delivery method in which a particular learning activity is offered. Also provides default values for the learning activity, such as cost and language. This is primarily used to help learners search the catalog for the type of delivery from which they learn best. Because PeopleSoft Enterprise Learning Management is a blended learning system, it does not enforce the delivery method.</p> <p>In PeopleSoft Supply Chain Management, identifies the method by which goods are shipped to their destinations (such as truck, air, rail, and so on). The delivery method is specified when creating shipment schedules.</p> |
| delivery method type | In PeopleSoft Enterprise Learning Management, identifies how learning activities can be delivered—for example, through online learning, classroom instruction, seminars, books, and so forth—in an organization. The type determines whether the delivery method includes scheduled components. |
| directory information tree | In PeopleSoft Directory Interface, the representation of a directory's hierarchical structure. |
| document sequencing | A flexible method that sequentially numbers the financial transactions (for example, bills, purchase orders, invoices, and payments) in the system for statutory reporting and for tracking commercial transaction activity. |
| dynamic detail tree | A tree that takes its detail values—dynamic details—directly from a table in the database, rather than from a range of values that are entered by the user. |
| edit table | A table in the database that has its own record definition, such as the Department table. As fields are entered into a PeopleSoft application, they can be validated against an edit table to ensure data integrity throughout the system. |
| effective date | A method of dating information in PeopleSoft applications. You can predate information to add historical data to your system, or postdate information in order to enter it before it actually goes into effect. By using effective dates, you don't delete values; you enter a new value with a current effective date. |
| EIM ledger | Abbreviation for <i>Enterprise Incentive Management ledger</i> . In PeopleSoft Enterprise Incentive Management, an object to handle incremental result gathering within the scope of a participant. The ledger captures a result set with all of the appropriate traces to the data origin and to the processing steps of which it is a result. |
| elimination set | In PeopleSoft General Ledger, a related group of intercompany accounts that is processed during consolidations. |
| entry event | In PeopleSoft General Ledger, Receivables, Payables, Purchasing, and Billing, a business process that generates multiple debits and credits resulting from single transactions to produce standard, supplemental accounting entries. |
| equitization | In PeopleSoft General Ledger, a business process that enables parent companies to calculate the net income of subsidiaries on a monthly basis and adjust that amount to increase the investment amount and equity income amount before performing consolidations. |
| event | <p>A predefined point either in the Component Processor flow or in the program flow. As each point is encountered, the event activates each component, triggering any PeopleCode program that is associated with that component and that event. Examples of events are FieldChange, SavePreChange, and RowDelete.</p> <p>In PeopleSoft Human Resources, also refers to an incident that affects benefits eligibility.</p> |
| event propagation process | In PeopleSoft Sales Incentive Management, a process that determines, through logic, the propagation of an original PeopleSoft Enterprise Incentive Management event and creates a derivative (duplicate) of the original event to be processed by other objects. |

| | |
|-----------------------------|---|
| | Sales Incentive Management uses this mechanism to implement splits, roll-ups, and so on. Event propagation determines who receives the credit. |
| exception | In PeopleSoft Receivables, an item that either is a deduction or is in dispute. |
| exclusive pricing | In PeopleSoft Order Management, a type of arbitration plan that is associated with a price rule. Exclusive pricing is used to price sales order transactions. |
| fact | In PeopleSoft applications, facts are numeric data values from fields from a source database as well as an analytic application. A fact can be anything you want to measure your business by, for example, revenue, actual, budget data, or sales numbers. A fact is stored on a fact table. |
| forecast item | A logical entity with a unique set of descriptive demand and forecast data that is used as the basis to forecast demand. You create forecast items for a wide range of uses, but they ultimately represent things that you buy, sell, or use in your organization and for which you require a predictable usage. |
| fund | In PeopleSoft Promotions Management, a budget that can be used to fund promotional activity. There are four funding methods: top down, fixed accrual, rolling accrual, and zero-based accrual. |
| generic process type | In PeopleSoft Process Scheduler, process types are identified by a generic process type. For example, the generic process type SQR includes all SQR process types, such as SQR process and SQR report. |
| group | In PeopleSoft Billing and Receivables, a posting entity that comprises one or more transactions (items, deposits, payments, transfers, matches, or write-offs). In PeopleSoft Human Resources Management and Supply Chain Management, any set of records that are associated under a single name or variable to run calculations in PeopleSoft business processes. In PeopleSoft Time and Labor, for example, employees are placed in groups for time reporting purposes. |
| incentive object | In PeopleSoft Enterprise Incentive Management, the incentive-related objects that define and support the PeopleSoft Enterprise Incentive Management calculation process and results, such as plan templates, plans, results data, user interaction objects, and so on. |
| incentive rule | In PeopleSoft Sales Incentive Management, the commands that act on transactions and turn them into compensation. A rule is one part in the process of turning a transaction into compensation. |
| incur | In PeopleSoft Promotions Management, to become liable for a promotional payment. In other words, you owe that amount to a customer for promotional activities. |
| item | In PeopleSoft Inventory, a tangible commodity that is stored in a business unit (shipped from a warehouse). In PeopleSoft Demand Planning, Inventory Policy Planning, and Supply Planning, a noninventory item that is designated as being used for planning purposes only. It can represent a family or group of inventory items. It can have a planning bill of material (BOM) or planning routing, and it can exist as a component on a planning BOM. A planning item cannot be specified on a production or engineering BOM or routing, and it cannot be used as a component in a production. The quantity on hand will never be maintained. |
| KPI | In PeopleSoft Receivables, an individual receivable. An item can be an invoice, a credit memo, a debit memo, a write-off, or an adjustment. An abbreviation for <i>key performance indicator</i> . A high-level measurement of how well an organization is doing in achieving critical success factors. This defines the data value or calculation upon which an assessment is determined. |

| | |
|-----------------------------|---|
| LDIF file | Abbreviation for <i>Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP) Data Interchange Format file</i> . Contains discrepancies between PeopleSoft data and directory data. |
| learner group | In PeopleSoft Enterprise Learning Management, a group of learners who are linked to the same learning environment. Members of the learner group can share the same attributes, such as the same department or job code. Learner groups are used to control access to and enrollment in learning activities and programs. They are also used to perform group enrollments and mass enrollments in the back office. |
| learning components | In PeopleSoft Enterprise Learning Management, the foundational building blocks of learning activities. PeopleSoft Enterprise Learning Management supports six basic types of learning components: web-based, session, webcast, test, survey, and assignment. One or more of these learning component types compose a single learning activity. |
| learning environment | In PeopleSoft Enterprise Learning Management, identifies a set of categories and catalog items that can be made available to learner groups. Also defines the default values that are assigned to the learning activities and programs that are created within a particular learning environment. Learning environments provide a way to partition the catalog so that learners see only those items that are relevant to them. |
| learning history | In PeopleSoft Enterprise Learning Management, a self-service repository for all of a learner's completed learning activities and programs. |
| ledger mapping | You use ledger mapping to relate expense data from general ledger accounts to resource objects. Multiple ledger line items can be mapped to one or more resource IDs. You can also use ledger mapping to map dollar amounts (referred to as <i>rates</i>) to business units. You can map the amounts in two different ways: an actual amount that represents actual costs of the accounting period, or a budgeted amount that can be used to calculate the capacity rates as well as budgeted model results. In PeopleSoft Enterprise Warehouse, you can map general ledger accounts to the EW Ledger table. |
| library section | In PeopleSoft Enterprise Incentive Management, a section that is defined in a plan (or template) and that is available for other plans to share. Changes to a library section are reflected in all plans that use it. |
| linked section | In PeopleSoft Enterprise Incentive Management, a section that is defined in a plan template but appears in a plan. Changes to linked sections propagate to plans using that section. |
| linked variable | In PeopleSoft Enterprise Incentive Management, a variable that is defined and maintained in a plan template and that also appears in a plan. Changes to linked variables propagate to plans using that variable. |
| load | In PeopleSoft Inventory, identifies a group of goods that are shipped together. Load management is a feature of PeopleSoft Inventory that is used to track the weight, the volume, and the destination of a shipment. |
| local functionality | In PeopleSoft HRMS, the set of information that is available for a specific country. You can access this information when you click the appropriate country flag in the global window, or when you access it by a local country menu. |
| location | Locations enable you to indicate the different types of addresses—for a company, for example, one address to receive bills, another for shipping, a third for postal deliveries, and a separate street address. Each address has a different location number. The primary location—indicated by a <i>1</i> —is the address you use most often and may be different from the main address. |
| logistical task | In PeopleSoft Services Procurement, an administrative task that is related to hiring a service provider. Logistical tasks are linked to the service type on the work order so that different types of services can have different logistical tasks. Logistical tasks include both preapproval tasks (such as assigning a new badge or ordering a new |

| | |
|-------------------------------|---|
| | laptop) and postapproval tasks (such as scheduling orientation or setting up the service provider email). The logistical tasks can be mandatory or optional. Mandatory preapproval tasks must be completed before the work order is approved. Mandatory postapproval tasks, on the other hand, must be completed before a work order is released to a service provider. |
| market template | In PeopleSoft Enterprise Incentive Management, additional functionality that is specific to a given market or industry and is built on top of a product category. |
| match group | In PeopleSoft Receivables, a group of receivables items and matching offset items. The system creates match groups by using user-defined matching criteria for selected field values. |
| MCF server | Abbreviation for <i>PeopleSoft MultiChannel Framework server</i> . Comprises the universal queue server and the MCF log server. Both processes are started when <i>MCF Servers</i> is selected in an application server domain configuration. |
| merchandising activity | In PeopleSoft Promotions Management, a specific discount type that is associated with a trade promotion (such as off-invoice, billback or rebate, or lump-sum payment) that defines the performance that is required to receive the discount. In the industry, you may know this as an offer, a discount, a merchandising event, an event, or a tactic. |
| meta-SQL | Meta-SQL constructs expand into platform-specific Structured Query Language (SQL) substrings. They are used in functions that pass SQL strings, such as in SQL objects, the SQLExec function, and PeopleSoft Application Engine programs. |
| metastring | Metastings are special expressions included in SQL string literals. The metastings, prefixed with a percent (%) symbol, are included directly in the string literals. They expand at run time into an appropriate substring for the current database platform. |
| multibook | In PeopleSoft General Ledger, multiple ledgers having multiple-base currencies that are defined for a business unit, with the option to post a single transaction to all base currencies (all ledgers) or to only one of those base currencies (ledgers). |
| multicurrency | The ability to process transactions in a currency other than the business unit's base currency. |
| national allowance | In PeopleSoft Promotions Management, a promotion at the corporate level that is funded by nondiscretionary dollars. In the industry, you may know this as a national promotion, a corporate promotion, or a corporate discount. |
| node-oriented tree | A tree that is based on a detail structure, but the detail values are not used. |
| pagelet | Each block of content on the home page is called a pagelet. These pagelets display summary information within a small rectangular area on the page. The pagelet provide users with a snapshot of their most relevant PeopleSoft and non-PeopleSoft content. |
| participant | In PeopleSoft Enterprise Incentive Management, participants are recipients of the incentive compensation calculation process. |
| participant object | Each participant object may be related to one or more compensation objects. See also <i>compensation object</i> . |
| partner | A company that supplies products or services that are resold or purchased by the enterprise. |
| pay cycle | In PeopleSoft Payables, a set of rules that define the criteria by which it should select scheduled payments for payment creation. |
| pending item | In PeopleSoft Receivables, an individual receivable (such as an invoice, a credit memo, or a write-off) that has been entered in or created by the system, but hasn't been posted. |

| | |
|---|--|
| PeopleCode | PeopleCode is a proprietary language, executed by the PeopleSoft application processor. PeopleCode generates results based upon existing data or user actions. By using business interlink objects, external services are available to all PeopleSoft applications wherever PeopleCode can be executed. |
| PeopleCode event | An action that a user takes upon an object, usually a record field, that is referenced within a PeopleSoft page. |
| PeopleSoft Internet Architecture | The fundamental architecture on which PeopleSoft 8 applications are constructed, consisting of a relational database management system (RDBMS), an application server, a web server, and a browser. |
| performance measurement | In PeopleSoft Enterprise Incentive Management, a variable used to store data (similar to an aggregator, but without a predefined formula) within the scope of an incentive plan. Performance measures are associated with a plan calendar, territory, and participant. Performance measurements are used for quota calculation and reporting. |
| period context | In PeopleSoft Enterprise Incentive Management, because a participant typically uses the same compensation plan for multiple periods, the period context associates a plan context with a specific calendar period and fiscal year. The period context references the associated plan context, thus forming a chain. Each plan context has a corresponding set of period contexts. |
| plan | In PeopleSoft Sales Incentive Management, a collection of allocation rules, variables, steps, sections, and incentive rules that instruct the PeopleSoft Enterprise Incentive Management engine in how to process transactions. |
| plan context | In PeopleSoft Enterprise Incentive Management, correlates a participant with the compensation plan and node to which the participant is assigned, enabling the PeopleSoft Enterprise Incentive Management system to find anything that is associated with the node and that is required to perform compensation processing. Each participant, node, and plan combination represents a unique plan context—if three participants are on a compensation structure, each has a different plan context. Configuration plans are identified by plan contexts and are associated with the participants that refer to them. |
| plan template | In PeopleSoft Enterprise Incentive Management, the base from which a plan is created. A plan template contains common sections and variables that are inherited by all plans that are created from the template. A template may contain steps and sections that are not visible in the plan definition. |
| planned learning | In PeopleSoft Enterprise Learning Management, a self-service repository for all of a learner's planned learning activities and programs. |
| planning instance | In PeopleSoft Supply Planning, a set of data (business units, items, supplies, and demands) constituting the inputs and outputs of a supply plan. |
| portal registry | In PeopleSoft applications, the portal registry is a tree-like structure in which content references are organized, classified, and registered. It is a central repository that defines both the structure and content of a portal through a hierarchical, tree-like structure of folders useful for organizing and securing content references. |
| price list | In PeopleSoft Enterprise Pricer, enables you to select products and conditions for which the price list applies to a transaction. During a transaction, the system either determines the product price based on the predefined search hierarchy for the transaction or uses the product's lowest price on any associated, active price lists. This price is used as the basis for any further discounts and surcharges. |
| price rule | In PeopleSoft Enterprise Pricer, defines the conditions that must be met for adjustments to be applied to the base price. Multiple rules can apply when conditions of each rule are met. |

| | |
|------------------------------|---|
| price rule condition | In PeopleSoft Enterprise Pricer, selects the price-by fields, the values for the price-by fields, and the operator that determines how the price-by fields are related to the transaction. |
| price rule key | In PeopleSoft Enterprise Pricer, defines the fields that are available to define price rule conditions (which are used to match a transaction) on the price rule. |
| process category | In PeopleSoft Process Scheduler, processes that are grouped for server load balancing and prioritization. |
| process group | In PeopleSoft Financials, a group of application processes (performed in a defined order) that users can initiate in real time, directly from a transaction entry page. |
| process definition | Process definitions define each run request. |
| process instance | A unique number that identifies each process request. This value is automatically incremented and assigned to each requested process when the process is submitted to run. |
| process job | You can link process definitions into a job request and process each request serially or in parallel. You can also initiate subsequent processes based on the return code from each prior request. |
| process request | A single run request, such as a Structured Query Report (SQR), a COBOL or Application Engine program, or a Crystal report that you run through PeopleSoft Process Scheduler. |
| process run control | A PeopleTools variable used to retain PeopleSoft Process Scheduler values needed at runtime for all requests that reference a run control ID. Do not confuse these with application run controls, which may be defined with the same run control ID, but only contain information specific to a given application process request. |
| product category | In PeopleSoft Enterprise Incentive Management, indicates an application in the Enterprise Incentive Management suite of products. Each transaction in the PeopleSoft Enterprise Incentive Management system is associated with a product category. |
| programs | In PeopleSoft Enterprise Learning Management, a high-level grouping that guides the learner along a specific learning path through sections of catalog items. PeopleSoft Enterprise Learning Systems provides two types of programs—curricula and certifications. |
| progress log | In PeopleSoft Services Procurement, tracks deliverable-based projects. This is similar to the time sheet in function and process. The service provider contact uses the progress log to record and submit progress on deliverables. The progress can be logged by the activity that is performed, by the percentage of work that is completed, or by the completion of milestone activities that are defined for the project. |
| project transaction | In PeopleSoft Project Costing, an individual transaction line that represents a cost, time, budget, or other transaction row. |
| promotion | In PeopleSoft Promotions Management, a trade promotion, which is typically funded from trade dollars and used by consumer products manufacturers to increase sales volume. |
| publishing | In PeopleSoft Enterprise Incentive Management, a stage in processing that makes incentive-related results available to participants. |
| record group | A set of logically and functionally related control tables and views. Record groups help enable TableSet sharing, which eliminates redundant data entry. Record groups ensure that TableSet sharing is applied consistently across all related tables and views. |
| record input VAT flag | Abbreviation for <i>record input value-added tax flag</i> . Within PeopleSoft Purchasing, Payables, and General Ledger, this flag indicates that you are recording input VAT |

| | |
|--------------------------------|--|
| | on the transaction. This flag, in conjunction with the record output VAT flag, is used to determine the accounting entries created for a transaction and to determine how a transaction is reported on the VAT return. For all cases within Purchasing and Payables where VAT information is tracked on a transaction, this flag is set to Yes. This flag is not used in PeopleSoft Order Management, Billing, or Receivables, where it is assumed that you are always recording only output VAT, or in PeopleSoft Expenses, where it is assumed that you are always recording only input VAT. |
| record output VAT flag | Abbreviation for <i>record output value-added tax flag</i> . See <i>record input VAT flag</i> . |
| reference data | In PeopleSoft Sales Incentive Management, system objects that represent the sales organization, such as territories, participants, products, customers, channels, and so on. |
| reference object | In PeopleSoft Enterprise Incentive Management, this dimension-type object further defines the business. Reference objects can have their own hierarchy (for example, product tree, customer tree, industry tree, and geography tree). |
| reference transaction | In commitment control, a reference transaction is a source transaction that is referenced by a higher-level (and usually later) source transaction, in order to automatically reverse all or part of the referenced transaction's budget-checked amount. This avoids duplicate postings during the sequential entry of the transaction at different commitment levels. For example, the amount of an encumbrance transaction (such as a purchase order) will, when checked and recorded against a budget, cause the system to concurrently reference and relieve all or part of the amount of a corresponding pre-encumbrance transaction, such as a purchase requisition. |
| regional sourcing | In PeopleSoft Purchasing, provides the infrastructure to maintain, display, and select an appropriate vendor and vendor pricing structure that is based on a regional sourcing model where the multiple ship to locations are grouped. Sourcing may occur at a level higher than the ship to location. |
| relationship object | In PeopleSoft Enterprise Incentive Management, these objects further define a compensation structure to resolve transactions by establishing associations between compensation objects and business objects. |
| remote data source data | Data that is extracted from a separate database and migrated into the local database. |
| REN server | Abbreviation for <i>real-time event notification server</i> in PeopleSoft MultiChannel Framework. |
| requester | In PeopleSoft eSettlements, an individual who requests goods or services and whose ID appears on the various procurement pages that reference purchase orders. |
| role | Describes how people fit into PeopleSoft Workflow. A role is a class of users who perform the same type of work, such as clerks or managers. Your business rules typically specify what user role needs to do an activity. |
| role user | A PeopleSoft Workflow user. A person's role user ID serves much the same purpose as a user ID does in other parts of the system. PeopleSoft Workflow uses role user IDs to determine how to route worklist items to users (through an email address, for example) and to track the roles that users play in the workflow. Role users do not need PeopleSoft user IDs. |
| roll up | In a tree, to roll up is to total sums based on the information hierarchy. |
| run control | A run control is a type of online page that is used to begin a process, such as the batch processing of a payroll run. Run control pages generally start a program that manipulates data. |
| run control ID | A unique ID to associate each user with his or her own run control table entries. |

| | |
|--------------------------------|--|
| run-level context | In PeopleSoft Enterprise Incentive Management, associates a particular run (and batch ID) with a period context and plan context. Every plan context that participates in a run has a separate run-level context. Because a run cannot span periods, only one run-level context is associated with each plan context. |
| search query | You use this set of objects to pass a query string and operators to the search engine. The search index returns a set of matching results with keys to the source documents. |
| section | In PeopleSoft Enterprise Incentive Management, a collection of incentive rules that operate on transactions of a specific type. Sections enable plans to be segmented to process logical events in different sections. |
| security event | In commitment control, security events trigger security authorization checking, such as budget entries, transfers, and adjustments; exception overrides and notifications; and inquiries. |
| serial genealogy | In PeopleSoft Manufacturing, the ability to track the composition of a specific, serial-controlled item. |
| serial in production | In PeopleSoft Manufacturing, enables the tracing of serial information for manufactured items. This is maintained in the Item Master record. |
| session | In PeopleSoft Enterprise Learning Management, a single meeting day of an activity (that is, the period of time between start and finish times within a day). The session stores the specific date, location, meeting time, and instructor. Sessions are used for scheduled training. |
| session template | In PeopleSoft Enterprise Learning Management, enables you to set up common activity characteristics that may be reused while scheduling a PeopleSoft Enterprise Learning Management activity—characteristics such as days of the week, start and end times, facility and room assignments, instructors, and equipment. A session pattern template can be attached to an activity that is being scheduled. Attaching a template to an activity causes all of the default template information to populate the activity session pattern. |
| setup relationship | In PeopleSoft Enterprise Incentive Management, a relationship object type that associates a configuration plan with any structure node. |
| share driver expression | In PeopleSoft Business Planning, a named planning method similar to a driver expression, but which you can set up globally for shared use within a single planning application or to be shared between multiple planning applications through PeopleSoft Enterprise Warehouse. |
| single signon | With single signon, users can, after being authenticated by a PeopleSoft application server, access a second PeopleSoft application server without entering a user ID or password. |
| source transaction | In commitment control, any transaction generated in a PeopleSoft or third-party application that is integrated with commitment control and which can be checked against commitment control budgets. For example, a pre-encumbrance, encumbrance, expenditure, recognized revenue, or collected revenue transaction. |
| SpeedChart | A user-defined shorthand key that designates several ChartKeys to be used for voucher entry. Percentages can optionally be related to each ChartKey in a SpeedChart definition. |
| SpeedType | A code representing a combination of ChartField values. SpeedTypes simplify the entry of ChartFields commonly used together. |
| staging | A method of consolidating selected partner offerings with the offerings from the enterprise's other partners. |

| | |
|------------------------------|--|
| statutory account | Account required by a regulatory authority for recording and reporting financial results. In PeopleSoft, this is equivalent to the Alternate Account (ALTACCT) ChartField. |
| step | In PeopleSoft Sales Incentive Management, a collection of sections in a plan. Each step corresponds to a step in the job run. |
| storage level | In PeopleSoft Inventory, identifies the level of a material storage location. Material storage locations are made up of a business unit, a storage area, and a storage level. You can set up to four storage levels. |
| subcustomer qualifier | A value that groups customers into a division for which you can generate detailed history, aging, events, and profiles. |
| Summary ChartField | You use summary ChartFields to create summary ledgers that roll up detail amounts based on specific detail values or on selected tree nodes. When detail values are summarized using tree nodes, summary ChartFields must be used in the summary ledger data record to accommodate the maximum length of a node name (20 characters). |
| summary ledger | An accounting feature used primarily in allocations, inquiries, and PS/nVision reporting to store combined account balances from detail ledgers. Summary ledgers increase speed and efficiency of reporting by eliminating the need to summarize detail ledger balances each time a report is requested. Instead, detail balances are summarized in a background process according to user-specified criteria and stored on summary ledgers. The summary ledgers are then accessed directly for reporting. |
| summary time period | In PeopleSoft Business Planning, any time period (other than a base time period) that is an aggregate of other time periods, including other summary time periods and base time periods, such as quarter and year total. |
| summary tree | A tree used to roll up accounts for each type of report in summary ledgers. Summary trees enable you to define trees on trees. In a summary tree, the detail values are really nodes on a detail tree or another summary tree (known as the <i>basis</i> tree). A summary tree structure specifies the details on which the summary trees are to be built. |
| syndicate | To distribute a production version of the enterprise catalog to partners. |
| system function | In PeopleSoft Receivables, an activity that defines how the system generates accounting entries for the general ledger. |
| TableSet | A means of sharing similar sets of values in control tables, where the actual data values are different but the structure of the tables is the same. |
| TableSet sharing | Shared data that is stored in many tables that are based on the same TableSets. Tables that use TableSet sharing contain the SETID field as an additional key or unique identifier. |
| target currency | The value of the entry currency or currencies converted to a single currency for budget viewing and inquiry purposes. |
| template | A template is HTML code associated with a web page. It defines the layout of the page and also where to get HTML for each part of the page. In PeopleSoft, you use templates to build a page by combining HTML from a number of sources. For a PeopleSoft portal, all templates must be registered in the portal registry, and each content reference must be assigned a template. |
| territory | In PeopleSoft Sales Incentive Management, hierarchical relationships of business objects, including regions, products, customers, industries, and participants. |
| TimeSpan | A relative period, such as year-to-date or current period, that can be used in various PeopleSoft General Ledger functions and reports when a rolling time frame, rather |

| | |
|------------------------------------|--|
| | than a specific date, is required. TimeSpans can also be used with flexible formulas in PeopleSoft Projects. |
| trace usage | In PeopleSoft Manufacturing, enables the control of which components will be traced during the manufacturing process. Serial- and lot-controlled components can be traced. This is maintained in the Item Master record. |
| transaction allocation | In PeopleSoft Enterprise Incentive Management, the process of identifying the owner of a transaction. When a raw transaction from a batch is allocated to a plan context, the transaction is duplicated in the PeopleSoft Enterprise Incentive Management transaction tables. |
| transaction state | In PeopleSoft Enterprise Incentive Management, a value assigned by an incentive rule to a transaction. Transaction states enable sections to process only transactions that are at a specific stage in system processing. After being successfully processed, transactions may be promoted to the next transaction state and “picked up” by a different section for further processing. |
| Translate table | A system edit table that stores codes and translate values for the miscellaneous fields in the database that do not warrant individual edit tables of their own. |
| tree | The graphical hierarchy in PeopleSoft systems that displays the relationship between all accounting units (for example, corporate divisions, projects, reporting groups, account numbers) and determines roll-up hierarchies. |
| unclaimed transaction | In PeopleSoft Enterprise Incentive Management, a transaction that is not claimed by a node or participant after the allocation process has completed, usually due to missing or incomplete data. Unclaimed transactions may be manually assigned to the appropriate node or participant by a compensation administrator. |
| universal navigation header | Every PeopleSoft portal includes the universal navigation header, intended to appear at the top of every page as long as the user is signed on to the portal. In addition to providing access to the standard navigation buttons (like Home, Favorites, and signoff) the universal navigation header can also display a welcome message for each user. |
| user interaction object | In PeopleSoft Sales Incentive Management, used to define the reporting components and reports that a participant can access in his or her context. All Sales Incentive Management user interface objects and reports are registered as user interaction objects. User interaction objects can be linked to a compensation structure node through a compensation relationship object (individually or as groups). |
| variable | In PeopleSoft Sales Incentive Management, the intermediate results of calculations. Variables hold the calculation results and are then inputs to other calculations. Variables can be plan variables that persist beyond the run of an engine or local variables that exist only during the processing of a section. |
| VAT exception | Abbreviation for <i>value-added tax exception</i> . A temporary or permanent exemption from paying VAT that is granted to an organization. This terms refers to both VAT exoneration and VAT suspension. |
| VAT exempt | Abbreviation for <i>value-added tax exempt</i> . Describes goods and services that are not subject to VAT. Organizations that supply exempt goods or services are unable to recover the related input VAT. This is also referred to as exempt without recovery. |
| VAT exoneration | Abbreviation for <i>value-added tax exoneration</i> . An organization that has been granted a permanent exemption from paying VAT due to the nature of that organization. |
| VAT suspension | Abbreviation for <i>value-added tax suspension</i> . An organization that has been granted a temporary exemption from paying VAT. |
| warehouse | A PeopleSoft data warehouse that consists of predefined ETL maps, data warehouse tools, and DataMart definitions. |

| | |
|---------------------------|---|
| work order | In PeopleSoft Services Procurement, enables an enterprise to create resource-based and deliverable-based transactions that specify the basic terms and conditions for hiring a specific service provider. When a service provider is hired, the service provider logs time or progress against the work order. |
| worksheet | A way of presenting data through a PeopleSoft Business Analysis Modeler interface that enables users to do in-depth analysis using pivoting tables, charts, notes, and history information. |
| worklist | The automated to-do list that PeopleSoft Workflow creates. From the worklist, you can directly access the pages you need to perform the next action, and then return to the worklist for another item. |
| XML schema | An XML definition that standardizes the representation of application messages, component interfaces, or business interlinks. |
| yield by operation | In PeopleSoft Manufacturing, the ability to plan the loss of a manufactured item on an operation-by-operation basis. |
| zero-rated VAT | Abbreviation for <i>zero-rated value-added tax</i> . A VAT transaction with a VAT code that has a tax percent of zero. Used to track taxable VAT activity where no actual VAT amount is charged. Organizations that supply zero-rated goods and services can still recover the related input VAT. This is also referred to as exempt with recovery. |

Index

Numerics/Symbols

360 - Degree View 160, 162

A

- acknowledgements, subscribing to 100
- additional documentation xiv
- address 142
- address, defining default selections 21
- Advisor
 - launching 130
- application class ID 29
- application class sets
 - creating 27
 - registering 27
- application fundamentals xiii
- ASNs
 - examples 101
 - statuses 101
 - subscribing to 101
- attachments
 - adding 146, 147
 - shopping cart 193
- Attributes page 198
- Attributes page (Order Capture Self Service) 195
- audit conditions
 - defining 53
- Audit Conditions page 47, 53
- audit events
 - understanding 53
- audit handler 53
- autonumbering
 - by business unit 92
 - defining for orders 92
 - defining for quotes 92
 - enabling 49
 - mapping numbers to PeopleSoft Order Management 92

B

- billing 230
- billing account 144
- billing information
 - entering 140
 - managing 143

- Billing page (mobile) 230
- Billing page (Mobile) 225
- bootstrap synchronization 213
- bulk order
 - defining on business unit 23
- business object relationship management (BORM) 4
- business process model
 - Banking Transactions 161
 - policy and claims 160
- business project
 - order 74
 - order maintenance 74, 82
 - quote 74
- business project conditions
 - defining 52
 - understanding 52
- Business Project Conditions page 47, 52
- Business Project Status page 77, 80, 82, 85
- business project tree 77
- business project, order
 - contract request phase 80
 - email confirmation phase 81
 - installed product creation phase 81
 - phases 80
 - publish phase 81
 - service order creation phase 82
 - shipment completion phase 82
 - viewing 80
- business project, order maintenance
 - completion phase 84
 - email confirmation phase 83
 - installed product completion phase 84
 - order notification phase 84
 - phases 83
 - publish order phase 83
- business project, quote
 - order email confirmation phase 85
 - order publish phase 85
 - viewing 85
- business projects
 - defining 75
 - PeopleSoft Order Capture 73
 - setting up 76

- understanding 5, 73
- updating trees 80
- using 73
- viewing 77
- working with Order Capture 156
- business projects, service management 110
- business units
 - creating business units for PeopleSoft Order Capture 16
 - creating Order Capture Self Service 174
 - default 18
 - defining business units for PeopleSoft Order Capture 16
 - defining Order Capture Self Service 174
 - setting up for PeopleSoft Contracts 19
 - setting up for PeopleSoft FieldService 19
 - setting up for PeopleSoft General Ledger 20
 - setting up for PeopleSoft Marketing 19
 - setting up for PeopleSoft Order Management 19
 - setting up for PeopleSoft Proposal Management 19
 - understanding 15, 173
 - understanding business units for PeopleSoft Order Capture 15
 - understanding business units for PeopleSoft Order Capture Self Service 173
 - understanding tax settings 66

C

- capture priority, defining 21
- Capture Setup Tables page 29, 31
- carrier integration
 - setup procedure 62
 - understanding 62
- carrier setup
 - FedEx example 65
 - UPS example 65
- carriers
 - defining 64
 - defining preferred 21
 - setting up 62
 - testing calculation 63
- Carriers page 64

- Carriers page 62
- cascade manual adjustment 135
- Catalog page 183
- catalogs
 - browsing 182
 - defining refresh intervals 21
 - setting up 69, 71
 - understanding 4, 70
- certificate level 68
- charge frequencies
 - defining 31
 - understanding 32
- Charge Frequencies page 29, 31
- charge types
 - defining 32
 - understanding 33
- Charge Types page 29, 32
- Check Availability and Pricing page 125
- checkout
 - accessing product attributes 198
 - changing product attributes 198
 - managing 194
 - managing payment options 195
 - managing product options 195
 - managing shipping options 195
 - multiple shipments 198
- Checkout page 195
- clone button 27
- collaborative selling applications, business processes 3
- comments, submitting xvii
- common elements xvii
- Configure Product page 138
- configured products, creating 137
- Confirmation page 195
- ConnectShip 9
- Consumer Hierarchy 23
- contact information xvii
- correspondence 5
 - generating 119
 - Order Confirmation template 120
 - Order Maintenance template 120
 - Order Status - Failure template 120
 - Order Status template 120
 - Quote Confirmation template 120
 - Sales Quote Proposal Letter template 120
 - understanding activity 119
- Create Order/Quote page (Mobile) 224
- credit card

- defining integration 61
- integration 9
- setting up processing 62
- understanding integration 62
- credit card vendor 20
- credit rating, defining minimum 21
- CRM to SCM status mappings 93
- CRM_SALES_ORDER_CHANGE 90
- cross-references xvi
- currency
 - defining 21
 - defining exchange rate type 21
- Customer Connection website xiv
- customer data model (CDM), *See* business object relationship management (BORM)
- customer, creating 127
- See Also* quick create

D

- Data Event Handlers page 29, 33
- data event handlers, creating 33
- Data Exchange (Data Publish) 98
- Data Publish (Data Publish) 98
- data selection 214
- default entry form values 122
- Default status type 38
- Delete Confirmation page 191
- Delete Confirmation page (shopping cart) 193
- Details page - Product Definition 223
- Details page - Relationships 223
- Device Bootstrap page 214
- discounts 132
- documentation
 - printed xiv
 - related xiv
 - updates xiv
- dynamic class 55
- dynamic events
 - creating 35
 - defining 55
 - understanding 36
- Dynamic Events page 29, 35, 47, 55
- Dynamic package page 138

E

- EIPs
 - activating 90, 91
 - activating application messages 91

- activating Integration Broker 91
- activating relationships 91
- activating transactions 91
- delivered 88
- Get Order Status 88
- Get Product Availability 88
- order maintenance 90
- Order Maintenance 90
- overview 91
- Publish Order 89
- Publish Order Change 89
- Publish Quote 89
- Receive ASN 89
- Receive Order Acknowledgement 89
- Receive Order Change Acknowledgement 89
- Receive Quote Acknowledgement 89
- Sales Order Status 89
- SCM 91
 - understanding fulfillment 88
- email, fulfillment specialist 21
- Engagement Service BP 52
- Engagement Service status type 38
- Enter Notes page 147
- Enterprise Order Metrics interactive report 170
- Enterprise Order Metrics page 168, 170
- Enterprise Order Revenue interactive report 169
- Enterprise Order Revenue page 168, 169
- Entry Form - Billing page 143
- Entry Form - Shipping page 141
- Entry Form page 111, 225
 - Advanced Shipping grid 141
 - Billing Summary grid 141
- Entry Form page (Mobile) 224
- event type 55
- exchange rate type, defining 21
- external (order) source, defining 45
- external fulfillment system, defining order/quote IDs 92
- external ID, establishing 92

F

- FEDEX_TRACK URL definition 65
- Find Products page 182
- finding products 182
- freight
 - integration 9
 - setting up calculation integration 63

- testing freight calculation 63
- third party calculation key 64
- freight integration
 - defining 62
 - setup procedure 62
 - understanding 62
- freight interlink, testing 20
- freight provider, defining 20
- Frequency Mappings page 30
- fulfillment 5
 - activating EIPs 91
 - integrating with 87
 - understanding 87
 - understanding integration 87
- fulfillment node, defining 59
- full synchronization 210

G

- Get Autonumber EIP 88
- Get Order Status EIP 88, 100
- Get Product Availability EIP 88
- glossary 253

H

- header status mappings 59
- Header Status Mappings page 58, 59
- header status, mapping 59
- header statuses 153
- Header Statuses page 30, 36
- header statuses, defining 36
- history 157
- hold code
 - Anonymous Customer Hold 148
 - Below Minimum Selling Price 149
 - Configuration Hold 149
 - Credit Card Hold 149
 - Currency Conversion Not Possible 149
 - Exceed Corporate Credit Limit 149
 - Exceeds Maximum Order Qty 149
 - Freight Calculation Hold 150
 - Line Site Contact Required 150
 - Line Site Required 150
 - No Bill To Contact 149
 - No Bill To Customer 149
 - No Capture Lines 149
 - No Product Package Components 149
 - No Ship To Contact 149
 - No Ship To Customer 149
 - No Sold To Contact 149

- Price List Not Found 150
- Product Catalog Violation 149
- Product Increment Violation 149
- Product Prerequisite Violation 150
- Under Minimum Quantity 149
- hold codes
 - defining 34
 - processing 34
- Hold Codes page 29, 34
- hold denial codes
 - defining 35
- Hold Denial Codes page 29, 35
- Hold Details page 150
- Hold Processing page 47, 49
- hold status
 - In Process 152
 - Override Hold 152
 - Passed 152
 - Requires Action 152
- hold statuses 152
- Hold Summary page 150
- holds
 - defining level 34
 - defining processing 49
 - delivered 51
 - enabling manual change to status 35
 - managing in Mobile Order Capture 231
 - removing 151
 - understanding 148
 - viewing details 151
 - viewing summary 150
- Holds page 151
- Holds page (Mobile) 225
- home button 27
- hotkeys, using 116

I

- icon
 - 360-Degree View 114
 - Add 114
 - add note 130
 - attributes 130
 - clone 27
 - Clone 114
 - configured product 130
 - Convert 114
 - dynamic package 130
 - home, main 27
 - Maintenance 114
 - next 27

- Personalize 114
- previous 27
- Refresh 114
- Save Order 114
- Send Correspondence 114
- Submit 114
- upsell alert 130
- industry-specific dynamic events 118
- integration 159
 - Banking Transactions 161
 - claims and policies 159
- Integration Definitions page 58
- integrations
 - defining 58
 - setting up 57
- interactive report
 - Enterprise Order Metrics 170
 - Enterprise Order Revenue 169
 - Order Metrics 169
 - Order Revenue 168
- interactive reports 5
 - dimensions 167
 - roles 166
 - setting up 166
 - understanding 165
 - using 165, 166

L

- laptop settings 219
- last results 210
- line actions
 - creating 37
 - understanding 38
- Line Actions page 30, 37
- line adjustments, viewing 146
- line details 227
 - modifying 133
 - viewing 133
- Line Details page 125, 133, 228
- Line Details page (mobile) 227
- Line Details page (Mobile) 224
- Line Details Summary page (Mobile) 224
- line status
 - mapping 92
 - understanding mapping 93
- Line Status DropDowns page 30
- line status mappings
 - defining 60
- Line Status Mappings page 58, 60
- Line Status Types page 30

- line status, mapping 59
- line statuses 154
 - creating 39
- Line Statuses page 30, 39

M

- maintenance
 - allowable 155
 - business project 82
 - phases 83
 - selecting handlers 54
 - understanding 153
 - understanding events 54
- maintenance conditions
 - defining 54
- Maintenance Conditions page 47, 54
- maintenance, defining 46
- managing services 111
- mappings
 - defining 58
 - setting up 57
- MCF
 - defining types 40, 55
 - static text 28
 - tokens 28
 - types 28
 - understanding types 56
- MCF Types page 30, 40, 47, 55
- MMA Partners xiv
- mobile customer options
 - defining 215
- Mobile Customer Options page 215
- Mobile Order Capture Defaults page 215, 218
- Mobile Product Defaults page 215, 217
- mobile product defaults, defining 217
- multichannel framework types, *See See* MCF
- Multiple Orders Per Recipient 23
- Multiple Shipments page 198
- Multiple Shipments page (Order Capture Self Service) 195

N

- next button 27
- node name 59
- node, publishing 61
- note origins
 - defining 41

- understanding 41
- Note Origins page 30, 41
- note types
 - defining 42
 - understanding 42
- Note Types page 30, 42
- note visibility 148
 - creating 42
 - understanding 43
- Note Visibility page 30, 42
- notes xvi, 231
 - adding 146, 147
 - shopping cart 193
- Notes & Attachments page (Order Capture Self Service) 191
- Notes & Attachments Summary page (Order Capture Self Service) 195
- Notes (details) page 231
- Notes page (Mobile) 225

O

- OCADMIN role 118
- OCMGR role 118
- OCREP role 118
- OMBACK (Order Completion) 96
- OMEC (Order Validation) 95
- OMEC (Outbound Acknowledgement) 97
- Option Category: General Options page 121, 122
- Order - Entry Form 125
- Order - Entry Form page 125
- Order - History page 157
- Order - Holds page 150
- order acknowledgements
 - subscribing to 100
- order business project
 - viewing 80
- Order Capture Definition - Business Unit page 16
- Order Capture Definition page 16
- order change
 - understanding allowable 155
- Order Change page (Order Capture Self Service) 195
- Order Completion (OMBACK) 96
- Order Details page (Order Capture Self Service) 200
- order maintenance
 - understanding 153

- order maintenance, EIPs 90
- order maintenance, notification of change preferences 22
- order messages, published 94
- Order Metrics interactive report 169
- Order Metrics page 168, 169
- order processing, defining 46
- Order Revenue interactive report 168
- Order Revenue page 168
- Order Status - Order Details page 202
- Order Status page 153, 200
- Order Status page (Order Capture Self Service) 200
- order statuses 153
- Order Validation (OMEC) 95
- ORDER_LINE_TAG 99
- orders
 - converting from quotes 204
 - creating autonumbering 92
 - creating in PeopleSoft Mobile Order Capture 225
 - creating new 124
 - entering details 125
 - maintaining 153
 - managing 113
 - searching 200
 - tracking 205
 - understanding message content 99
 - viewing 231
 - viewing details 202
- orders – externally-originating
 - managing 102
 - working with 102
- orders, creating 161
- Organization Hierarchy 23
- Outbound Acknowledgement (OMEC Outbound) 97

P

- package ID 56
- package tree viewer 29
- packages
 - configuring 139
 - configuring dynamic 139
- pagelet
 - Catalog Search 181
 - Recent Orders 181
 - Recent Quotes 181
 - Shopping Cart 181
- payment information, entering 140

- payment options, checkout 195
- PDA options 219
- PDA settings 218
- PeopleBooks
 - ordering xiv
- PeopleCode, typographical
 - conventions xv
- PeopleSoft Advisor Dialog Start page 125
- PeopleSoft Advisor page 182
- PeopleSoft application fundamentals xiii
- PeopleSoft Configurator
 - using 138
- PeopleSoft Contracts business units 19
- PeopleSoft CRM for Communications,
 - understanding dynamic events 118
- PeopleSoft Enterprise Pricer 4
- PeopleSoft FieldService business units 19
- PeopleSoft General Ledger business
 - units 20
- PeopleSoft Marketing business units 19
- PeopleSoft Mobile Agent 213
- PeopleSoft Mobile Order Capture
 - data distribution rules 211
 - features 6
 - overview 3
 - setting up 213
 - synchronizing 210
 - understanding 209
 - understanding the differences 209
 - using 224
 - workbenches 214
 - working with products 221
- PeopleSoft Order Capture
 - accessing 117
 - accessing from 360-degree viewer 117
 - accessing from CTI integration 118
 - accessing from PeopleSoft Sales 117
 - accessing setup tables 31
 - application class sets 118
 - business units 15
 - buttons 113
 - CSR functionality available 115
 - defining tracking URL 45
 - delivered user IDs and user roles 118
 - directly navigation to 117
 - features 4
 - icons 113
 - implementing 10
 - integrations 8
 - overview 3
 - personalizing 121
 - setting up 25
 - setting up tables 27
 - understanding 113
 - understanding setup 25
 - using 113
 - workbenches 4
 - working with business projects 156
- PeopleSoft Order Capture Self Service
 - checkout 194
 - comparing products 186
 - defining tracking URL 45
 - entering orders using quick order
 - entry 189
 - features 5
 - finding orders 200
 - finding quotes 200
 - implementing 10
 - integrations 8
 - launching product advisor 188
 - overview 3, 179
 - searching a product catalog 182
 - selecting products 182, 183
 - setting up 177
 - shopping cart 190
 - using 179
 - viewing order status 200
 - viewing product details 185
 - viewing quote status 200
- PeopleSoft Order Management business
 - units 19
- PeopleSoft Proposal Management business
 - units 19
- PeopleSoft Real-Time Advisor
 - launching from PeopleSoft Order
 - Capture 132
- PeopleSoft Real-Time Advisor Dialog Start
 - page 132
- PeopleTools Integration Broker
 - activating messages 91
 - activating relationships 91
 - activating transactions 91
- permissions for self service 180
- personalizations 5
 - choosing entry form 122
 - understanding 121
- Personalizations page 121, 122
- phase details 79
- phases 75
 - defining 75

- order business project 80
- order maintenance 83
- portal pack pagelets 181
- pre-fulfillment tasks 94
- pre-qualification for orders 119
- pre-qualification for products 119
- prerequisites xiii
- previous button 27
- price
 - adjustment target 135
 - cascade manual adjustment 135
 - percent/amount 131, 135
 - replace manual adjustment 135
 - replace/cascade 135
- price adjustments
 - displaying details 145
 - viewing 145
- Price Adjustments page 145
- pricing
 - overview 4
 - setting up 69, 71
 - understanding 70
- Pricing Keys tab 146
- printed documentation xiv
- priorities
 - defining 43
 - understanding 44
- Priorities page 30, 43
- priority of capture, defining default 21
- procedure
 - constructing tracking links 65
 - setting up FedEx 65
 - setting up freight calculation
 - integration 63
 - setting up freight integration 62
 - setting up UPS 65
 - testing freight calculation 63
- Process Types page 47, 56
- process types, defining 56
- Product Advisor List page 125, 132
- product advisor page 188
- product application
 - status 161
- product attributes
 - accessing checkout 198
 - changing checkout 198
- product catalog, *See* catalogs
- Product Catalog page 182
- product catalogs
 - setting up 69, 71

- understanding 70
- Product Comparison page 182, 186
- product data model 4
- Product Definition-Attachment page (Mobile) 222
- Product Definition-Details page (Mobile) 222
- Product Definition-Notes page (Mobile) 222
- Product Definition-Product Groups page (Mobile) 222
- Product Definition-Relationship Details page (Mobile) 222
- Product Definition-Relationships page (Mobile) 222
- product details
 - viewing, Order Capture Self Service 185
- Product Details page 182, 185
- products
 - adding in mobile 227
 - comparing, Order Capture Self Service 186
 - configuring 138
 - creating configured 137
 - deleting from shopping cart 193
 - modifying details 133
 - setting up 69, 70
 - setting up configuration 135
 - understanding 69
 - using quick order entry 189
 - viewing 222
 - viewing details 133
- promotion code 131
- PSMOBILE.INI file 213
- Publish Order Change EIP 89
- Publish Order EIP 89
- Publish Quote EIP 89

Q

- quick (product) order entry
 - entering orders 189
 - using to select products 189
- quick create 5
 - using in PeopleSoft Order Capture 127
- Quick Order Entry page 189
- quote
 - defining duration 22
 - defining expiration 22
- Quote - Entry Form page 125

- quote acknowledgements
 - subscribing to 100
- quote application 160
- quote business project
 - viewing 85
- Quote Details page (Order Capture Self Service) 200
- quote messages, published 94
- quote processing, defining 46
- Quote Status page 203
- Quote Status page (Order Capture Self Service) 200
- quotes
 - converting to order 204
 - creating autonumbering 92
 - creating in PeopleSoft Mobile Order Capture 225
 - creating new 124
 - managing 113
 - searching 203
 - understanding message content 99
 - viewing 231
 - viewing details 204

R

- real-time status rule, defining 48
- reason code matching 67
- Receive ASN EIP 89
- Receive Order Acknowledgement EIP 89
- Receive Order Change Acknowledgement EIP 89
- Receive Quote Acknowledgement EIP 89
- recommended products 182
- recurring charges 132
- related actions
 - viewing 155
 - viewing in mobile 231
- Related Actions page 156
- related documentation xiv
- Related Objects page (Mobile) 225
- Relationship Details page 223
- replace manual adjustment 135
- RO_INTEGRATION 99
- RO_LINE_HIST 100
- role identification for self service 180

S

- Sales Order Status EIP 89

- SALES_CRM_ORDER_CHANGE_LOAD 90
- SALES_ORDER STATUS 91
- SALES_ORDER_
 - ACKNOWLEDGEMENT 100
- SALES_ORDER_CHANGE_
 - NOTICE 91, 100
- SALES_ORDER_STATUS 100
- SALES_QUOTE_NOTICE 100
- SCM to CRM status mappings 93
- SCM_PROD_AVAIL EIP 135
- search criteria, configuring 124
- searching a product catalogue 182
- self - service 162
- Self Service page 174
- service actions
 - cancel service 106
 - change service features 105
 - disconnect service 106
 - renew service 106
 - resume service 106
 - suspend service 106
- service management
 - business projects 110
 - EIPs 106
 - working with 111
- Service Management 105
- service, add 107
- service, cancel 110
- service, change 107
- service, disconnect 109
- service, renew 109
- service, resume 108
- service, suspend 108
- setID 221
- setID, default 18
- ship from, defining 20
- Shipment Details page (Mobile) 224
- shipments
 - destination splitting destinations 143
 - handling multiple at checkout 198
 - moving lines to another 143
- Shipments page (mobile) 229
- shipping information (mobile)
 - changing/viewing 229
- shipping information, entering 140, 141
- shipping notices
 - subscribing to 101
- shipping options
 - checkout 195

- Shipping page (mobile) 229
- Shipping Summary page (Mobile) 224
- shopping cart
 - adding attachments 193
 - adding notes 193
 - confirming deletion of products 193
 - understanding 190
 - using 190
 - working from 191
 - working within 191
- Shopping Cart
 - Notes & Attachments page 193
- Shopping Cart page 191
- source code, defining default 21
- source codes
 - defining 44
 - understanding 44
- Source Codes page 30, 44
- source mappings 59
 - defining 61
- Source Mappings page 58, 61
- spider out for 360 view 216
- spider out to customer 216
- spider out to relationships 217
- status
 - defining real-time status rule 48
 - mapping line 92
 - product application 161
 - quote application 160
 - selecting fire from 48
 - selecting fire to 49
 - understanding line mappings 93
- status - header
 - Canceled 154
 - Complete 154
 - Fulfillment Hold 153
 - Hold 153
 - In Process 153
 - Open 153
 - Pending 153
- status interval, refreshing 59
- status mappings, defining 57
- status mappings, delivered 93
- status request rule, defining 48
- status updates - on-demand
 - getting 100
- status, defining header 36
- statuses
 - subscribing to messages 99
- statuses - line

- CRM 154
 - partial CRM 154
- SCM 154
- STEP 67
- Submit Confirmation page 125
- suggestions, submitting xvii
- Summary page (Mobile) 225
- Supply Chain Management (SCM)
 - pre-fulfillment tasks 94
 - running batch jobs 94

T

- tasks 75
 - defining 75
- tax
 - defining installation options 66
 - defining integration 66
 - defining provider options, 67
 - integration 9
 - order acceptance location 20
 - order origin location 20
 - product groups 66
 - understanding integration 66
- tax integration
 - overview 5
- Tax Interlink, testing 20
- tax on totals form 132
- Tax Provider Options page 67
- tax vendor, defining 20
- Taxware 9
 - certificate level 68
 - reason code matching 67
 - selecting 20
 - setting up 67
 - STEP 67
- TDM 68
- terms 253
- third party calculations (mobile) 231
- third-party integrations, overview 8
- toolbar
 - buttons 26
 - configuring 26
 - modifications 26
 - page subtabs 26
 - personalization by CSR 26
- tracking numbers, constructing 65
- transformation process, understanding 98
- transition rules 75
 - defining 75
- Type Definition page 47

- type definitions, creating 47
- typographical conventions xv

U

- update applications 210
- upload changes 210
- user IDs for self service 180
- user IDs, delivered with PeopleSoft Order Capture 118
- user roles, delivered with PeopleSoft Order Capture 118

V

- Value-Added Tax (VAT) 20
- Vertex 9
 - selecting 20
 - setting up 68
 - TDM 68
- visual cues xvi

W

- warnings xvi
- Workbench
 - accessing setup options 31
 - defining capture type options 46
 - defining integration 57
 - defining integration options 58
 - defining options 27
- workbenches
 - mobile impact 214
 - overview 4
- WorldTax (VAT), selecting 20

